This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

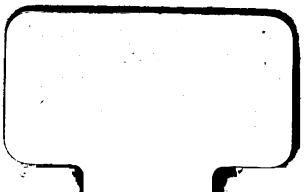
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`


Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

King Edward the Sixth's First Latin Book.

THE

LATIN ACCIDENCE;

INCLUDING

A SHORT SYNTAX AND PROSODY.

WITH AN ENGLISH TRANSLATION

FOR THE USE OF JUNIOR CLASSES.

FOURTH EDITION

LONDON:
JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.

3050. 1861. 2 . ".

Price Two Shillings and Sixpence.

Digitized by Google

BODLEIAN LIBRARY
25OCT84
OXFORD.

LONDON
PRINTED BY SPOTTISWOODE AND CO.
NEW-STREET SQUARE

Digitized by Google

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	Page
ORTHOGRAPHY.	
Letters and Syllables . .	1
Parts of Speech	2
NOUNS	2
Numbers	3
Cases	3
Genders	4
NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE . . .	5
General Rules	5
First Declension	5
Greek Words of	5
Observations on the Cases of First Declension . . .	6
Second Declension . . .	7
Observations on Cases of Greek Words of	8
General Rule	9
Third Declension	9
Observations on Cases of Greek Words of	10
Fourth Declension . . .	12
Observations on Cases of *Fifth Declension*	13
Indeclinables, Defectives, and Heteroclites	13
NOUNS ADJECTIVE	14
Comparison of	15
NUMERALS	19
Temporal Numerals . . .	21
PRONOUNS	23
Personal	24
Possessive	24
Demonstrative	25
Relative	26
Interrogative	27
Prefixes and Affixes to Pronouns	27
VERBS	29
Voices	30
Verbs Transitive and Intransitive	30
Impersonals	31
Moods	32
Tenses	32
Absolute and Relative Tenses	33
Numbers and Persons . .	34
Gerunds and Supines . .	34
Participles	34
Verb Esse	35
Observations on . . .	37
Verbs Regular in *Active* Voice	40
Declension of Verbs Active	40
First Conjugation . . .	41
Formation of Tenses . . .	44
Second Conjugation . . .	44
Third Conjugation . . .	47
Fourth Conjugation . . .	50
Observations on the Tenses in the Active Voice . . .	52
Periphrastic Conjugation .	53
Passive Voice	54
Declension of Verbs Passive	54
First Conjugation . . .	54
Second Conjugation . . .	56
Third Conjugation . . .	59
Fourth Conjugation . . .	61
Observations on the Tenses in the Passive Voice . .	64

Digitized by Google

	Page
Periphrastic Conjugation	64
Examples of	65
Gerunds and Supines	65
Deponent Verbs	66
Of the First Conjugation	66
Second Conjugation	68
Third Conjugation	68
Fourth Conjugation	70
Irregular Verbs	70
Observations on	74
Defective Verbs	75
Impersonal Verbs	77
ADVERBS	78
Adverbs of Place	79
Adverbs of Time	81
Adverbs of Quantity	81
Adverbs Interrogative, Affirmative, Negative; and Examples of	82
Comparison of Adverbs	83
CONJUNCTIONS	84
Examples of	84
Difference and use of *Aut* and *Vel, Sive, Seu, Neve, Neu,* and *Ve*	84
Different kinds of *Conjunctions*	85
PREPOSITIONS	86
Governing an Ablative	86
Governing an Accusative	86
Observations on	87
Governing *both* Accusative and Ablative	87
Peculiar Meanings of *Prepositions*	88
INTERJECTIONS	90
ETYMOLOGY	91
Classing of Letters	91
Interchange of Vowels	91
Greek	92
Interchange of Consonants	92
Assimilation	93
Insertion of Letters	93
Omission of Letters	94
Forming of Words	94
Forming of Substantives	94
Patronymics	94
Gentile Nouns	95
Diminutives	96
Appellatives	97
Abstractions	97
Change of Noun from Male to Female	98
Forming of *Adjectives*	98
Forming of *Verbs*	100
Inceptives	100
Desideratives	101
Frequentatives	101
Diminutives	101
Intensives	101
Compounded Verbs	102
Forming of *Adverbs*	102
Etymology of *Prepositions*	103
Figures in Etymology	104
Dependence of Prosody on Etymology	104
ORTHOGRAPHY	104
THE THREE CONCORDS EXPLAINED	105
PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS, or The Genders of Nouns	108
QUÆ GENUS, or Irregular Nouns	113
AS IN PRÆSENTI, or the Perfects and Supines of Verbs	116

	Page
Accidence construed	125
Propria quæ Maribus construed	133
Quæ Genus construed	140
As in Præsenti construed	144

Digitized by Google

ELEMENTS

OF

THE LATIN TONGUE.

§ 1. — LETTERS, VOWELS, SYLLABLES, DIPHTHONGS.

THE Latin letters are twenty-four, and are thus written:

Capitals. — A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.

Small. — a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v x y z.

U and *V* being written as *V* in Latin MSS., are considered as one Letter.

The Romans wrote in CAPITAL LETTERS (*litteræ unciales*). The smaller ones (*litteræ cursivæ*) were not in use before A. D. 500.

The letter *Q* is the Phœnician ϙ (*κόππα*). *F* is the Æolic Digamma, ϝ; Hebrew *Wav*. (Greek Grammar, § 1, Obs. 2)

W is not a Latin letter; it first appears on a coin A. D. 536.

Of these letters, six are *Vowels* — *a, e, i, o, u, y.* The rest are *Consonants.*

A *Vowel* makes a full sound of itself: as, *e.*

A *Consonant* cannot sound without a vowel: as, *b* (*e*).

Consonants are divided into *Mutes, Liquids,* and *Double Letters.*

The *Liquids* are *l, m, n, r.*

The *Double Letters* are *j, x, z.*

J is made of *ii*; *X* of *cs* or *gs*; *Z* of *ds* or *ss.* Words from the *Greek* never begin with *J*, but with *I*; as, *Iason* (from Ἰάσων), not *Jason.*

The remaining letters are *Mutes.*

A *Syllable* is a distinct sound of one or more letters pronounced in a breath.

Digitized by Google

A *Diphthong* is the sound of two vowels in one syllable.

Of Diphthongs there are *five* in number: *au, eu, ei, ae, oe.*

These two last are commonly pronounced as the vowel *e*, and are often joined, and written thus: *æ, œ.*

When *ae* and *oe* are *two* syllables, they are generally marked by two points (*puncta diæreseos*) thus: *aër, Typhoëus.*

This mark ¯ over a syllable shows that it is to be pronounced *long:* and this ˘, that it is to be pronounced *short:* as, *hūjŭs.*

§ 2.—THE PARTS OF SPEECH are Eight:

1. Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, *declined.*
2. Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, Interjection, *undeclined.*

All the Parts of Speech are contained in the verse—

Væ tibi ridenti, quia mox post, gaudia flebis.

§ 3.—OF A NOUN.

A NOUN is the name (*nomen, ὄνομα, γνόω, γινώσκω, gnosco*) of whatsoever Thing, Being, or Quality, we see or discourse of.

Nouns are of two kinds: *Substantives* and *Adjectives.*

A Noun *Substantive* declares its own meaning, and requires not another word to be joined with it, to show its signification: as, *homo* a man; *liber* a book.

Obs. A Noun Substantive is either *proper* to one; as, *Edvardus* is a *proper name;* or else is *common* to more; as, *homo* is a *name common* to all men.

A Noun *Adjective* always requires to be joined to (*adjici*) a Substantive, which stands under (*sub stat*) and supports it, and of which it shows the nature or quality: as, *bonus* homo a *good* man

Digitized by Google

§ 4. — NUMBERS OF NOUNS.

NOUNS in Latin have *two numbers:* the Singular and the Plural.

The *Singular* speaks but of one: as, *pater* a father.

The *Plural* speaks of more than one: as, *patres* fathers.

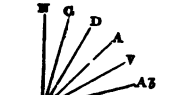
The Latin language has no Dual: nor had the old Greek; nor the Æolic dialect, whence the Latin is partly derived. (See below, § 64. Obs. 8., and § 102.)

---

§ 5. — CASES OF NOUNS.

NOUNS have *six Cases* (*casus*, or *fallings*) in each number: The Nominative, the Genitive, the Dative, the Accusative, the Vocative, and the Ablative.

A Noun in the Nominative Case (*casus rectus*, πτῶσις ὀρθή) was considered by ancient Grammarians as a line perpendicular; and in the other cases (*casus obliqui*) as gradually *declining* or *falling* from the *perpendicular*.



To *decline* a Noun, is to make it pass through these *cases* or *fallings*, and the representation of them is called a *Declension* (κλίσις).

The *Nominative* (or *naming*) case comes before the verb, and answers the question *who?* or *what?* as, *who teaches? magister docet* the master teaches.

The *Genitive* (or *getting*) case (from *gigno* to *beget*) is known by the sign *of*, and answers the question *whose?* or *whereof?* as, *whose learning? doctrina magistri* the learning *of* the master, *or* the master's learning. (See § 141.)

The *Dative* (or *giving*) case (from *do* to *give*) is known by the signs *to* or *for*, and answers the question *to whom?* or *to* or *for what?* as, *to whom do I give the book? do librum magistro* I give the book to the master. (See § 143.)

The *Accusative* case (from *accuso* to *accuse*) follows the

Digitized by Google

verb, and answers the question *whom?* or *what?* as *whom do you love? amo magistrum* I love the master. (See § 145.)

The *Vocative* (or *calling*) case (from *voco* to *call*) is known by calling or speaking to: as, *O magister* O master.

The *Ablative** (or *taking away*) case (from *ab* from, and *fero, latus,* to *take*) is known by prepositions, expressed or understood, serving to the ablative case: as, *de magistro* of the master; *coram magistro* before the master.

Also, the prepositions *in, with, from, by,* and the word *than* after the comparative degree, are signs of the ablative case.

---

§ 6. — GENDERS.

GENDERS of nouns are three: the *Masculine,* the *Feminine,* and the *Neuter.*

The Pronoun† *hic, hæc, hoc,* he, she, it, is used in Grammar to denote the *Gender* of Nouns, and is thus declined:

	Singular.				*Plural.*		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nominative	*Hic*	*hæc*	*hoc*	Nom.	*Hi*	*hæ*	*hæc*
Genitive	*Hujus*			Gen.	*Horum*	*harum*	*horum*
Dative	*Huic*			Dat.	*His*		
Accusative	*Hunc*	*hanc*	*hoc*	Acc.	*Hos*	*has*	*hæc*
Vocative	——			Voc.	——		
Ablative	*Hōc*	*hāc*	*hōc*	Abl.	*His.*		

Nouns declined with *hic* and *hæc* are called *Common,* that is, are of the Masculine and Feminine Gender: as, *hic* and *hæc parens* a parent, father or mother.

Nouns are called *Doubtful,* when declined with either *hic* or *hæc*: as, *hic dama* a deer, *hæc dama* a doe.

Some nouns are also called *Epicœne* (*ἐπίκοινα, κοινὸς communis*); that is, when under *hic* or *hæc* both sexes are signified: as, *hic passer* a sparrow, both male and female; *hæc aquila* an eagle.

Obs. Of the GENDERS of Nouns, see below, § 128.

---

* *Ablativus* proprius est Romanorum. — Priscian. v. 13. 75.

† Romani *articulos* non habent. — Priscian. xi. 1. 2.

Digitized by Google

§ 7.—DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

There are FIVE Declensions of Substantives, which are distinguished by the *ending of the Genitive Case.*

GENERAL RULES. (Gr. Gr. § 12.)

Obs. 1. The Vocative and Nominative *Singular* are *alike* in all words except those in *us* of the second Declension: as Nom. *Musa*, Voc. *Musa*; but Nom. *Dominus*, Voc. *Domine*. In the *Plural* they are *always alike.*

Obs. 2. The Accusative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Nouns ends in *m* (Greek ν), and the Accusative Plural in *s* (Greek ς): as, Acc. Sing. *Musam, Dominum, Nubem*, &c.; and Acc. Plur. *Musas, Dominos, Nubes*, &c.

Obs. 3. The Genitive Plural always ends in *um* (Greek ων).

Obs. 4. The Dative and Ablative Plural end in *s* (Greek ς).

Obs. 5. The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative of all Neuters are alike, and end in the Plural in *ă* (Greek ă).

Obs. 6. There is no *Neuter* word of the First or Fifth Declension.

---

§ 8.—THE FIRST DECLENSION

Makes the Genitive and Dative Cases Singular to end in *æ:* as,

	Singular.		*Plural.*
N. *hæc*	Mus-ă *a song*	N. *hæ*	Mus-æ *songs*
G. *hujus*	Mus-æ *of a song*	G. *harum*	Mus-ārum *of songs*
D. *huic*	Mus-æ *to a song*	D. *his*	Mus-īs *to songs*
A. *hanc*	Mus-am *a song*	A. *has*	Mus-ās *songs*
V. *o*	Mus-ă *o song*	V. *o*	Musæ *o songs*
A. *ab hâc*	Mus-ā *from a song.*	A. *ab his*	Mus-is *from songs.*

(Cp. Gr. Gr. μοῦσα, § 16.)

So are declined the Masculines in *a:* as, *hic poeta* a poet; Gen. *hujus poetæ*, &c.

Obs. 1. To this Declension belong certain words from the GREEK, in *ē, ās*, and *ēs.*

Digitized by Google

Feminines in ē (like τιμή, Gr. Gr. § 16.):

Singular.

N. Musĭcē,	A. Musicēn,
G. Musicēs,	V. Musicē,
D. Musicæ,	A. Musicē.

Masculines in ās (like ταμίας, Gr. Gr. § 15.), and ēs (like κριτής, Gr. Gr. § 15.):

N. Ænēas,	A. Ænēan *or* am,
G. Æneæ,	V. Æneā,
D. Æneæ,	A. Æneā.
N. Anchīses,	A. Anchisen *or* am,
G. Anchisæ,	V. Anchisē (ĕ *or* ă, *rare*),
D. Anchisæ,	A. Anchisē (ă, *less common*).

All Masculine Patronymics are declined like *Anchisēs*: as, *Atridēs*, G. *Atridæ*. Horace uses both Vocatives *Atridē* and *Atridă*. On these Patronymics, see below, § 105.

In the Plural all these are declined like *Musa*.

Obs. 2. The Latin Poets use both Greek and Latin forms of words, the Prose Writers, for the most part, only Latin.

---

§ 9. — Observations on the Cases of the First Declension.

Obs. 1. The Old Genitive Singular ending in *ās* and *ēs* (Greek, -αο, -ης), *e. g. Familia* (like φιλία, Gr. Gr. § 16.) made in the Genitive *Familias*. Hence *Paterfamilias* a father of a family. (Priscian. vi. 1. 6.)

The *s* being thrown off, another Genitive arose by the addition of *i* — *familiai*; and this, by contraction, became *familiæ*.

Obs. 2. The Accusative of Greek words in *ă* is, in *Poetry*, sometimes *ăn*: as, *Ossăn, Cyllăn, Electrăn*.

Obs. 3. Horace generally uses the *Greek forms* (*Circes*, &c.) in his *Odes* (being from *Greek models*): the *Latin* (*Circæ*, &c.), in his *Satires* and *Epistles*, which approach nearer to the language of common conversation.

Obs. 4. The Romans *changed* the Greek final *as* of names of *Slaves, Jews*, &c., into *a*: as, Δημᾶς *Dama*, Ἀπελλᾶς, *Apella*: but in the case of *Philosophers* and *Freemen*, they generally *retained* the Greek *as*: as, *Anaxagoras, Lysias*.

Obs. 5. The Genitive Plural had two endings, *um* and *arum* (μουσῶν, μουσάϝων). That in *um* remains in Patronymics, as *Dardanidûm*, and *drachmûm, amphorûm* (with numerals); and in compounds of *colo* and *gigno*, as *cælicolûm, terrigenûm*.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 6. The Dative Plural had also two endings: *is* and *ābus* (μουσαῖς, μουσάϝις). That in *abus* remains in *Deabus, Ămabus, equabus, mulabus, servabus, famulabus, libertabus;* and in the adjectives *ambabus, duabus;* and a like one remains in other declensions, as *nubĭbus, gradĭbus, faciēbus.*

§ 10.—THE SECOND DECLENSION

Makes the Genitive case Singular to end in *i:* as,

	Singular.		*Plural.*
N. *hic*	Magist-ĕr *a master*	N. *hi*	Magist-rī *masters* [*ters*
G. *hujus*	Magist-rī *of a master*	G. *horum*	Magistr-ōrum *of mas-*
D. *huic*	Magist-rō *to a master*	D. *his*	Magistr-īs *to masters*
A. *hunc*	Magist-rum *a master*	A. *hos*	Magistr-ōs *masters*
V. *o*	Magist-ĕr *o master*	V. *o*	Magistr-ī *o masters*
A. *ab hoc*	Magist-rō *by a master.*	A. *ab his*	Magistr-īs *by masters.*

Obs. Certain words in *ĕr* make *ĕri* in the Genitive Singular and *ĕrō* in the Dative; and so throughout, as,

Ădulter *dat* adultĕri
In genitivo singulāri.
Sic puer, vesper, gener, socer,
Asper, miser, tener, lacer;
Sic prosper, Lĭber (*wine* and *free*),
Sic presbўter, *compostaque*
Duobus verbis gero, fero;
Ut armiger, *dant* ĕri, ĕro.

	Singular.		*Plural.*
N. *hic*	Domin-ŭs *a lord*	N. *hi*	Domin-ī *lords*
G. *hujus*	Domin-ī *of a lord*	G. *horum*	Domin-ōrum *of lords*
D. *huic*	Domin-ō *to a lord*	D. *his*	Domin-īs *to lords*
A. *hunc*	Domin-um *a lord*	A. *hos*	Domin-ōs *lords*
V. *o*	Domin-ĕ *o lord*	V. *o*	Domin-ī *o lords*
A. *ab hoc*	Domin-ō *by a lord.*	A. *ab his*	Domin-īs *by lords.*

(Cp. λόγος, Gr. Gr. § 17.)

	Singular.		*Plural.*
N. *hoc*	Regn-um *a kingdom*	N. *hæc*	Regn-ă *kingdoms*
G. *hujus*	Regn-i *of a kingdom*	G. *horum*	Regn-orum *of kingdoms*
D. *huic*	Regn-o *to a kingdom*	D. *his*	Regn-is *to kingdoms*
A. *hoc*	Regn-um *a kingdom*	A. *hæc*	Regn-ă *kingdoms*
V. *o*	Regn-um *o kingdom*	V. *o*	Regn-ă *o kingdoms*
A. *ab hoc*	Regn-o *from a kingdom.*	A. *ab his*	Regn-is *from kingdoms.*

(Cp. ξύλον, Gr. Gr. § 17.)

Digitized by Google

§ 11.— Observations on the Cases of the Second Declension.

Obs. 1. In the Genitive Case Singular, Proper Names of Men and other Substantives in *ius* and *ium* made ī, not *ii*, during the reign of Augustus; as, *Virgilius*, Gen. *Virgilī*; *ingenium*, Gen. *ingĕnī*: but Adjectives made *ii*; as, *egregius*, *egregii*.

Scilicet egregii mortalem altique silentī. — *Hor.*

The four-syllable forms in *ii*, *ingenii*, &c. were first used by the poet Propertius. And the poet Manilius is presumed to be of the Augustan age from his *never* using them.

Obs. 2. Also in the Vocative Case Singular, Proper Names of Men in *ius* make ī; as, *Virgilius*, Voc. *Virgilī*; so *filius*, Voc. *fīlī*; *genius*, Voc *genī*: but not *Adjectives*, as, *Cynthius*, Voc. *Cynthie*; nor Proper Names in ĭus (*i* long), as, *Sperchĭus*, Voc. *Sperchĭe*.

Obs. 3. The Genitive Plural *ûm* for *orum*, as *Deûm* (Θεῶν) for *Deorum*, *remains* in certain words denoting *trades*, *coins*, *weights*, and *measures*: as, *faber* a workman, Gen. Plur. *fabrûm*. So, *denariûm*, *talentûm*, *modiûm* (δηναρίων, ταλάντων, μοδίων); and, in *Poetry*, in Adjectives and Names of People and Distributive Numerals: as, *magnanimûm*, *Rutulûm*, *vicenûm*.

Obs. 4. Deus in the Vocative Singular makes *Deus*.

Plural.

N. Dī (*seldom* Dĕī),	D. Dīs (*seldom* Deis),	V. Dī,
G. Deûm *or* Deorum,	A. Deos,	A. Dīs (*seldom* Deis).

The two-syllable forms *Dĕi*, *Dĕis*, for *Dī*, *Dis*, were first used by the poet Ovid.

Obs. 5. Proper Names of Men are thus declined:

N. Publius Virgilius Maro.
G. Publī Virgĭlī Marōnis,
D. Publio Virgilio Maroni,

and so throughout.

---

§ 12. — To this Declension belong certain Words from the Greek in *ŏs*, *ōs*, *ēūs*, and *ŏn*.

N. Delŏs,	A. Delŏn *or* um,
G. Deli,	V. Delĕ,
D. Delō,	A. Delō.

(Cp. λόγος, Gr. Gr. § 16.)

N. Andrŏgĕōs,	A. Androgeōn *or* ō, *or* ōna,
G. Androgeō *or* ī,	V. Androgeōs,
D. Androgeō,	A. Androgeō.

(Cp. λεώς, Gr. Gr. § 19.)

N. Orpheūs,	A. Orphĕă *or* ĕum,
G. Orphĕos *or* ĕī, *or* ī,	V. Orpheu,
D. Orpheī *or* ēī, *or* ĕō,	A. Orphĕō.

(Cp. βασιλεύς, Gr. Gr. § 27., where it differs from *Dominus*.)

Digitized by Google

Cicero approves of the Accusative *Peiræĕum* (in Prose), and condemns *Piræĕa* (from Πειραιεύς). Curvis e littoribus *Piræi.* — *Catull.*

Add to these — N. Panthous, G. Panthī, | D. Panthō, A. Panthum, | V. Panthu, A. Panthō.

(Cp. *νόος, νοῦς*, Gr. Gr. § 18.)

Obs. 1. The Genitive Plural of Greek Neuters in ŏn is ōn: as *Georgicōn.*

Obs. 2. Ex. — *Gen.* In foribus letum Andrŏgĕō. — *Virg.*
Terēī mutaverat artus. — *Virg.*
Tectaque Penthĕī. — *Hor.*
Dat. Orphēī Calliopeă. — *Virg.* Thesĕō promiserat. — *Cic.*
Qualis adest Thetidi qualis concordia Pelēō. — *Catull.*
Acc. Ællnŏn in sylvis. — *Ov.* Troïlŏn. — *Hor.* Pittăcŏn. — *Juv*
Typhōeă. — *Virg.* Orphēa. — *Virg*
Voc. Quo res summa loco, Panthū. — *Virg.*
Abl. Threïcio blandius Orphĕō. — *Hor.*

§ 13. — GENERAL RULE.

The Nominative and Accusative Plural in the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions are alike: as, Nom. and Acc. *Nubes;* Nom. and Acc. *Gradus;* Nom. and Acc. *Facies.*

§ 14. — THE THIRD DECLENSION

Makes the Genitive Case Singular to end in *is:* as,

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. *hæc*	Nub-ēs *a cloud*	N. *hæ*	Nub-ēs *clouds*
G. *hujus*	Nub-ĭs *of a cloud*	G. *harum*	Nub-ĭum *of clouds*
D. *huic*	Nub-ī *to a cloud*	D. *his*	Nub-ĭbŭs *to clouds*
A. *hanc*	Nub-em *a cloud*	A. *has*	Nub-ēs *clouds*
V. *o*	Nub-ēs *o cloud*	V. *o*	Nub-ēs *o clouds*
A. *ab hac*	Nub-ĕ *from a cloud.*	A. *ab his*	Nub-ĭbŭs *from clouds.*

Obs. So decline, also, nouns masculine; e. g., Civis. *a citizen;* Gen. *Civis, of a citizen,* &c. Also neuters; e. g., Mare, *the sea;* Gen. Maris, *of the sea,* &c.

Obs. Many Nouns of this Declension *increase* in the Genitive Case; as,

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. *hic*	Lapĭ-s *a stone*	N. *hi*	Lapid-ēs *stones*
G. *hujus*	Lapĭ-dĭs *of a stone*	G. *horum*	Lapid-um *of stones*
D. *huic*	Lapi-dī *to a stone*	D *his*	Lapid-ĭbŭs *to stones*
A. *hunc*	Lapi-dem *a stone*	A. *hos*	Lapid-ēs *stones*
V. *o*	Lapĭ-s *o stone*	V. *o*	Lapid-ēs *o stones*
A. *ab hoc*	Lapi-dĕ *from a stone.*	A. *ab his*	Lapid-ĭbŭs *from stones.*

Digitized by Google

	Singular.	*Plural.*	
N.	*hoc*	Op-ŭs *a work*	N. *hæc* Oper-ă *works*
G.	*hujus*	Op-ĕrĭs *of a work*	G. *horum* Oper-um *of works*
D.	*huic*	Op-erī *to a work*	D. *his* Oper-ĭbŭs *to works*
A.	*hoc*	Op-ŭs *a work*	A. *hæc* Oper-ă *works*
V.	*o*	Op-ŭs *o work*	V. *o* Oper-ă *o works*
A.	*ab hoc*	Op-erĕ *from a work.*	A. *ab his* Oper-ĭbŭs *from works.*

	Singular.	*Plural.*	
N.	*hic et hæc*	Paren-s *a parent*	N. *hī et hæ* Parent-es *parents*
G.	*hujus*	Paren-tis *of a parent*	G. *hōr. et har.* Parent-um *of parents*
D.	*huic*	Paren-ti *to a parent*	D. *his* Parent-ibus *to parents*
A.	*hunc et hanc*	Paren-tem *a parent*	A. *hos et has* Parent-es *parents*
V.	*o*	Paren-s *o parent*	V. *o* Parent-es *o parents*
A.	*ab hoc et hac*	Paren-tē *from a parent.*	A. *ab his* Parent-ibus *from parents.*

Obs. So decline, also, nouns masculine; e. g., Leo, *a lion;* Gen. Leōnis, *of a lion:* and feminines; e. g., Virgo, *a virgin;* Gen. Virgĭnis, *of a virgin,* &c.

---

§ 15.—Observations on the Cases of the Third Declension.

On the Genitive Singular *of the Third Declension.*

Examples.—Masculine and Feminine.

O.	*Latro,*	G. *Latrōnis.*	ES.	*Miles,*	G. *Militis.*
	Macedo,	G. *Macedŏnis.*	IS.	*Lapis,*	G. *Lapĭdis.*
	Homo,	G. *Hominis.*		*Avis,*	G. *Avis.*
ER.	*Carcer,*	G. *Carcĕris.*	US.	*Virtus,*	G. *Virtūtis.*
	Pater,	G. *Patris.*	S.	*Trabs,*	G. *Trăbis.*
OR.	*Labor,*	G. *Labōris.*		*Pars,*	G. *Partis.*
	Arbor,	G. *Arbŏris.*	X.	*Fax,*	G. *Fācis.*
AS.	*Civitas,*	G. *Civitātis.*		*Pollex,*	G. *Pollĭcis.*
ES.	*Nubes,*	G. *Nubis.*		*Cervix,*	G. *Cervīcis.*
	Merces,	G. *Mercēdis.*		*Merx,*	G. *Mercis.*

Neuter.

C.	*Lac,*	G. *Lactis.*	R.	*Calcar,*	G. *Calcāris.*
E.	*Rete,*	G. *Retis.*	R.	*Ebur,*	G. *Ebŏris.*
L.	*Mĕl,*	G. *Mellis.*	S.	*Opus,*	G. *Opĕris.*
	Animal,	G. *Animālis.*		*Littus,*	G. *Littŏris.*
N.	*Carmen,*	G. *Carmĭnis.*		*Jūs,*	G. *Jūris.*

Digitized by Google

§ 16.— *Obs.* 1. The old *Dative* of the Third Declension, like the Ablative, ended in *e* and *i*: *e. g. Triumviri ære flando; solvendo ære esse. — Postquam est morte datus Plautus, Comœdia luget.*

Obs. 2. The old *Accusative* case of Masculine and Feminine Nouns of this Declension was in *im* (Greek ιν), and it remains in the following words:

IM *habent in accusativo*
Vis, ravis, pelvis, sitis, tussis,
Sinăpis, cŭcŭmis, amussis,
Præsēpis, cannăbis, secūris,
Charybdis, tigris, *atque* būris,
Et omnes FLUVII *in* IS,
Ut Albis, Tibris, Thamesis.

Sed restis, puppis, turris, navis,
Et strĭgĭlis, sementis, clavis,
Adjunge febris *et* aquālis,
Hæc EM *vel* IM *dant, utrum malis.*

Obs. 3. *In ablativo singulari*
Malunt in I *quàm* E *formari*
APPELLATIVA, Atheniensis;
Et ADJECTIVA, *quisque* MENSIS
In is, Aprīlis; —*ober,* —*ember,*
Ut hi, Octōber *et* November;
Et quæ dant IM *accusativo*
Hæc dabunt I *in ablativo.*

Obs. 4. The GENERAL RULE for the Genitive Plural is, that Parisyllabic Nouns form it in IUM, and Imparisyllabic in UM: as,

Imbrium divina avis *imminentum.* — *Hor.*

But to this there are exceptions; as follow —

IUM *plurali genitivo*
Dant, dabant I *quot ablativo;*
Et S *et* X *finita, ante*
Eunte tantum consonante;
IUM *plerumque monosyllaba*
Dant, IUM *ferè parisyllaba.*

Sed quædam sunt excipienda
Memoriæque committenda.

Digitized by Google

UM, vates, senex, pater, panis,
UM *dant* accĭpĭter *et* canis;
UM, frater, mater, jŭvĕnis;
UM, *ferè* apis, volucris.
UM, crux, dux, nux, Thrax, fax, *et* grex,
Gryps, Phryx, vox, lynx, *et* rex, *et* lex,
Fur, ren, *et* splen, fraus, laus, *et* mos,
Crus, grus, *et* sus, præs, pes, *et* flos.

Obs. 5. Some words have *both* UM and IUM: as, *mensis, sedes, mus, palus.* Adjectives of one termination end in *ium:* as, *felix, felicium.*

Obs. 6. The Accusative Plural of words which have *ium* in the Genitive Plural ended in *is* or *eis;* but is usually written *es,* as *cives, gentes.*

Obs. 7. To the THIRD Declension belong certain Greek words in *ă,* as *poemă,* Gen. *-ătis,* (*like σῶμα,* Gr. Gr. § 20.); in *ĕr,* as *aër,* Gen. *-ĕris;* in *ăs,* as *lampăs,* Gen. *-ădis,* (like λαμπὰς); in *ĭs,* as *poesĭs,* Gen. *-ĕos* (like πόλις, Gr. Gr. § 26.); in *ōs,* as *herōs,* Gen. *-ōos,* (ἥρως, Gr. Gr. § 20.); in *ō,* as *echō,* Gen. *ūs,* (ἠχὼ, Gen. *-όος, -οῦς*); in *ŏs,* as *chaŏs,* Gen. *-us,* (*χάος,* Gen. *-εος, -ους*), (like τεῖχος, Gr. Gr. § 25.), *mĕlŏs, cētŏs, ĕpŏs,* (like τεῖχος); Plur. *Tempe,* (like τεῖχη); in *ys,* as *chlamys,* Acc. *-yda;* and others.

Obs. 8. The Genitive Singular, in PROSE, of *poesis* is *poesis.*

The Accusative Singular of *Paris* is *Parim, -in,* ĭda, and *-idem;* of *aër,* is *aëră, aërem; of æthĕr,* is *ætheră, æthĕrem.*

The Ablative Singular of *Chaos* is *Chao* — Virg.

The Dative and Ablative Plural of *poema* is *poemătis.* The Poets use *Trŏădsi, Lemnĭădsi,* from *Troas, Lemnias.*

Achilles, Pericles, Ulysses, &c., (besides their *Latin* inflexion), make a Genitive Singular in *i* and in *ĕī*; as, *ad pedes Achillĕī* — Hor. *Pupilla Periclī* — Pers. *Remiges Ulyssĕī* — Hor. *Regnum Alyattĕī* — Hor. Even in Prose, as *Pericli, Archimedi,* in Cicero.

Obs. 9. The Greek words in *-ων,* which increase in *-ωνος* or *-ονος, generally* end, in Latin, in *o.* Πλάτων, *-ωνος* — *Plato;* Ἀγαμέμνων, *-ονος* — *Agamemno;* and so *Macedo.* Those in *-ῶν, -ῶντος,* or *-οντος,* generally preserve *on,* as Ξενοφῶν — *Xenophon;* Ἀνακρέων — *Anacreon.*

Obs. 10. Virgil never uses the Genitive, Dative, Accusative, or Ablative of *Dido,* either in the Greek or Latin form.

Digitized by Google

§ 17.—THE FOURTH DECLENSION

Makes the Genitive case Singular to end in *ūs*: as,

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. *hic*	Gradŭ-s *a step*	N. *hi*	Grad-ūs *steps*
G. *hujus*	Gradū-s *of a step*	G. *horum*	Grad-ŭum *of steps*
D. *huic*	Gradu-ī *to a step*	D. *his*	Grad-ĭbŭs *to steps*
A. *hunc*	Gradu-m *a step*	A. *hos*	Grad-ūs *steps*
V. *o*	Gradŭ-s *o step*	V. *o*	Grad-ūs *o steps*
A. *ab hoc*	Gradū *from a step.*	A. *ab his*	Grad-ĭbŭs *from steps.*

§ 18.— *Obs.* 1. The Fourth Declension is a contracted form of the Third: thus, *gradus*, Gen. *gradŭis, gradūs*; Abl. *gradŭĕ, gradū.*

Obs. 2. The Dative Singular in the Poets ends sometimes in *ū* (from *ŭi*): as, *Sese mortali ostendere cœtu*— Catull.: *Sicanio prætenta sinu*— Virg.: *Parce metu, Cytherea*— Virg.: and the Genitive Plural in *ûm*; as *Quæ gratia currûm* — Virg.

Obs. 3. The Dative Plural of some words of the Fourth Declension ends in UBUS; as,

In UBUS, Quercus, ficus, acus,
(*Non* IBUS) arcus, verus, lacus.
In UBUS, specus, tribus, artus,
Et ferè portus, *atque* partus.

Obs. 4. The word DOMUS belongs to the Fourth and Second Declensions, but avoids certain endings (as, Singular, *dome, domu*; Plural *domi, domis*) of both; hence the memorial line

Sperne me, mu, mi, mis, *si declinare* domus *vis.*

Obs. 5. Neuters in *u*, indeclinable in the Singular, are declined in the Plural like words of the Fourth Declension: as, N. A. V. *cornua*, G. *cornuum*, D. A. *cornibus*. So *genu.*

§ 19.—THE FIFTH DECLENSION

Makes the Genitive and Dative Cases Singular to end in *ei*: as,

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. *hæc*	Faciē-s *a face*	N. *hæ*	Faciē-s *faces*
G. *hujus*	Faciē-i *of a face*	G. *harum*	Faciē-rum *of faces*
D. *huic*	Faciē-i *to a face*	D. *his*	Faciē-bus *to faces*
A. *hanc*	Faciē-m *a face*	A. *has*	Faciē-s *faces*
V. *o*	Faciē-s *o face*	V. *o*	Faciē-s *o faces*
A. *ab hac*	Faciē *from a face.*	A. *ab his*	Faciē-bus *from faces.*

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1. The Fifth Declension is also a contracted form of the Third, thus: *diēs*, Gen. *diēis*, by apocope of *s*, *diēi*.

The old Genitive is preserved in the word *Dies-Piter*, for *Diei Pater*.

Obs. 2. A shorter form of the *Genitive* was in *-e*: as, *die*. *Libra die somnique pares ubi fecerit horas* — Virg.; *Constantis juvenem fide* — Hor.; and is found in the Adverbs (properly genitive cases), *quotī-die*, *postrī-die* (posteri diei), *merī-die* (*meri* (*μέσου*) diei), and others.

Plebei (in the words *Tribuni Plebei*) is the genitive from *Plebes*.

§ 20. — OF INDECLINABLES, DEFECTIVES, AND HETEROCLITES, *see below*, § 130.

Some words have different senses, according to their Declension or Gender: as, *fastus*, *-ūs* pride, *fasti* the calendar; *forum* the market, *fori* passages in a ship.

The Plural of some words has a different meaning from the Singular: as,

Singular.	*Plural.*
Ædes a temple,	*Ædes* a house.
Auxilium help,	*Auxilia* auxiliary troops.
Bonum something good,	*Bona* property.
Carcer a prison,	*Carceres* the barriers of a race-course.
Castrum a fort,	*Castra* a camp.
Comitium a part of the Roman forum,	*Comitia* assembly for election.
Cupedia daintiness,	*Cupediæ* or *cupedia* dainties
Copia abundance,	*Copiæ* troops.
Facultas power to do something,	*Facultates* property.
Fortuna fortune,	*Fortunæ* goods of fortune.
Gratia favour,	*Gratiæ* thanks *or* the Graces.
Littera letter of the alphabet,	*Litteræ* an epistle.
Lustrum a space of five years,	*Lustra* dens of wild beasts.
(*Ops*, obsol.) *Opis* help,	*Opes* power, wealth.
Opera labour,	*Operæ* workmen.
Rostrum a beak,	*Rostra* the place in the Roman forum from which the orators spoke.
Sal salt,	*Sales* witticisms.
Tempus time,	*Tempora* the temples of the head, as well as times.

Digitized by Google

§ 21.—DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE

FIRST DECLENSION.

NOUNS ADJECTIVE *of Three Terminations:* as, *bon-us, -a, -um,* good; *tener, -a, -um,* tender; *pulch-er, -ra, -rum,* fair; are declined, in the *masculine* and *neuter genders,* like *Nouns Substantive* of the *Second Declension;* and in the *feminine gender,* like *Nouns* of the *First Declension.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Bon-us	bon-a	bon-um	Bon-i	bon-æ	bon-a
G.	Bon-i	bon-æ	bon-i	Bon-orum	bon-arum	bon-orum
D.	Bon-o	bon-æ	bon-o	Bon-is		
A.	Bon-um	bon-am	bon-um	Bon-os	bon-as	bon-a
V.	Bon-e	bon-a	bon-um	Bon-i	bon-æ	bon-a
A.	Bon-o	bon-a	bon-o	Bon-is.		

(Cp. καλὸς, ἡ, ὸν, Gr. Gr. § 30.)

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Tener	tener-a	tener-um	Tener-i	tener-æ	tener-a
G.	Tener-i	tener-æ	tener-i	Tener-orum	-arum	-orum
D.	Tener-o	tener-æ	tener-o	Tener-is		
A.	Tener-um	-am	-um	Tener-os	tener-as	tener-a
V.	Tener	tener-a	tener-um	Tener-i	tener-æ	tener-a
A.	Tener-o	tener-a	tener-o.	Tener-is.		

Tener is shortened from *tenerus.* (Cp. ἐχθρὸς, -ὰ, ὸν, Gr. Gr. § 30.)

For other words so declined, as *asper, miser,* &c., see above, § 10. *Dexter* is declined *both* like *pulcher* and *tener.*

So decline *satur, -a, -um.*

22.—SECOND DECLENSION.

The Adjectives of Three Terminations in *er, is, ĕ,* are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension: as, *acer* sharp.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Acer	ācris	ācre	Acres	acres	acria
G.	Acris			Acrium		
D.	Acri			Acribus		
A.	Acrem	acrem	acre	Acres	acres	acria
V.	Acer	acris	acre	Acres	acres	acria
A.	Acri.			Acribus.		

So decline *dĭdcer, campester, celer, equester, salŭber, silvester:* but *alacris* is sometimes used as a nominative masculine.

Digitized by Google

UNUS one, *solus* alone, *totus* the whole, *ullus* any (diminutive of *ūnus*), *nullus* none, *alter* the other of two, *uter* whether of the two, *neuter* neither of the two, and other Adjectives, make the Genitive Case Singular in *ius*, and the Dative in *i*: as,

Unus, solus, totus, ullus,
Uter, alter, neuter, nullus.
ALIus-*que*, *in genitivo*
IUS *dant*; I in dativo.

Obs. Alteruter, alterutra *vel* altera utra, alterutrum *vel* alterum utrum; G. alterutrius, *vel* alterius utrius; D. alterutri, *vel* alteri uteri; utraque enim declinatio in usu veterum est. — Priscian. vi. 1. 4.; vi. 7. 5.

N. Uterque, utrăque, utrumque,
G. Utriusque,
D. Utrique, &c.

Unus one, is thus declined:

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Un-us	un-a	un-um	Un-i	un-æ	un-a
G.	Un-ius			Un-orum	-arum	-orum
D.	Un-i			Un-is		
A.	Un-um	un-am	un-um	Un-os	un-as	un-a
V.	Un-e	un-a	un-um	Un-i	un-æ	un-a
A.	Un-o	un-â	un-o.	Un-is.		

Unus has no *plural* number, unless it be joined to a Substantive which has *no singular* number: as, *unæ litteræ* a letter, *una mœnia* a wall.

In like manner is declined *alius* another, which makes *aliud* in the neuter gender, singular number.

Obs. For *alius* and *aliud*, the forms *alis*, *alid*, are found in the older Latin writers, as Catullus and Lucretius. Hence *ali-quis*, i. e. *alius quis*.

Digitized by Google

§ 23. — THIRD DECLENSION.

NOUNS ADJECTIVE of *Two*, and those also of *One Termination*, are declined like the *Third Declension* of *Substantives:* as, *tristis* sad, *melior* better, *felix* happy.

	Singular.		*Plural.*
N. *hic et hæc*	Trist-is *hoc* trist-ĕ	N. *hi et hæ*	Trist-es *hæc* trist-ia
G. *hujus*	Trist-is	G. *hor. har. hor.*	Trist-ium
D. *huic*	Trist-i	D. *his*	Trist-ibus
A. *hunc et hanc*	Trist-em *hoc* trist-ĕ	A. *hos et has*	Trist-es *hæc* trist-ia
V. *o*	Tristis *et* trist-ĕ	V. *o*	Trist-es *et* trist-ia
A. *ab hoc, hac, hoc*	Tristi.	A. *ab his*	Trist-ibus.

N. *hic et hæc*	Melĭ-ŏr *hoc* meli-ŭs	N. *hi et hæ*	Melior-es *hæc* melior-a
G. *hujus*	Meli-ōris	G. *hor. har. hor.*	Melior-um
D. *huic*	Meli-ori	D. *his*	Melior-ibus
A. *hunc et hanc*	Meli-orem *hoc* meliŭs	A. *hos et has*	Melior-es *hæc* melior-a
V. *o*	Meli-or *et* meliŭs	V. *o*	Melior-es *et* melior-a
A. *ab hoc, hac, hoc*	Meli-ore *vel* meliori.	A. *ab his*	Melior-ibus.

(Cp. ἀληθής, Gr. Gr. § 31.)

N. *hic hæc et hoc*	Feli-x	N. *hi et hæ*	Felic-es *hæc* felic-ia
G. *hujus*	Felī-cis	G. *hor. har. hor.*	Felic-ium
D. *huic*	Feli-ci	D. *his*	Felic-ibus
A. *hunc et hanc*	Feli-cem *hoc* feli-x	A. *hos et has*	Felic-es *hæc* felic-ia
V. *o*	Feli-x	V. *o*	Felic-es *et* felic-ia
A. *ab hoc hac, hoc*	Feli-cĕ *vel* feli-ci.	A. *ab his*	Felic-ibus.

(Cp. πένης, Gr. Gr. § 32.)

---

§ 24. — *Obs.* 1. Some adjectives of one termination are joined with neuter Substantives, only in particular cases: thus say, Abl. *tricuspide telo;* but say not, Nom. *telum tricuspis;* because a neuter Substantive may end, in the ablative, in *e*: but none ends, in the nominative, in *is*.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 2 Some Verbals in *x* are joined to *neuter* as well as *feminine*, but *not* to *masculine*, Substantives: as, *ultrice flagello, victricibus armis.*

Obs. 3. The Ablative Singular of Adjectives of two terminations or one generally ends in I: as, *tristis, tristi.*

Except, *In ablativo singulari*
Malunt in E *quàm* I *formari*
Hæc, pauper, puber, hospes, compos,
Superstes, senex, sospes, impos,
Compotâque cum corpus, pes,
Bicorpor, bipes, multipes.

Other Exceptions:

Obs. 4. Adjectives of one termination, as *felix*, have both E and I in the Ablative, but I is more usual; and comparatives, as *melior*, but E is more usual; though, in Poetry, *felice* and *meliori* are common. Horace prefers the form in *e*, as *meliore.*

Obs. 5. The Ablatives of *Participles*, not used *adjectively* (or as mere epithets, but denoting a *fact* or *circumstance*), from Nominatives in *ans* and *ens*, end in *te* not *ti*: (thus *Nocte sequente* means—the night coming on; but *Sequenti nocte* is—the following night): as *Imperante Augusto*, not *imperanti.* Horace *never* forms this Participle in TI.

Obs. 6. *Complures* makes both *complura* and *compluria*, in the Nom. Neut. Plur. *Vetus* has only *vetera*; *Plus* has only *plura.*

---

§ 25.—*Ambo* both, and *duo* two, are Nouns Adjective, and are thus declined in the *Plural* Number;

Nom.	Amb-o	amb-æ	amb-o	*both*,
Gen.	Amb-orum	amb-arum	amb-orum	*of both*,
Dat.	Amb-obus	amb-abus	amb-obus	*to both*,
Acc.	Amb-o *et* -os	amb-as	amb-o	*both*,
Voc.	Amb-o	amb-æ	amb-o	*both*,
Abl.	Amb-obus	amb-abus	amb-obus	*with both*

(Cp. ἄμφω, and δύω, δύο, Gr. Gr. § 36.)

Tres *three*, is declined like *Tristes*: as, N. A. V. Tres, *neut.* tria; G. trium; D. tribus.

(Cp. τρεῖς, Gr. Gr. § 36.)

Obs. Some words are composed of two members, the one a Substantive, the other an Adjective: as N. V. *Res-publica*, G. D. *Rei-publicæ*, A. *Rem-publicam*, Ab. *Re-publicâ.* So, N. A. V. *Jus-jurandum*, G. *Juris-jurandi*, &c.

Digitized by Google

§ 26.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

ADJECTIVES have *Three* degrees of Comparison:

I. The *Positive*, which denotes the quality of a thing *absolutely*, without any reference to *more* or *less*; as, *doctus* learned, *brevis* short.

II. The *Comparative*, which expresses an *increase* or *extension* of the quantity: as, *doctior* more learned, *brevior* shorter *or* more short.

III. The *Superlative*, which increases or extends the signification, or comparison, to the greatest degree: as, *doctissĭmus* most learned, *brevissĭmus* the shortest or most short.

The *Comparative* is formed from the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *or* in the masculine and feminine gender, and *us* in the neuter: as, from Gen. *docti*, is formed *hic et hæc doctĭor*, *hoc doctius*, more learned; of *brevis* Dat. *brevi*, is formed *hic et hæc brevĭor*, *hoc brevius*, shorter *or* more short.

The *Superlative* is formed also from the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *ssĭmus*: as, from Gen. *docti*, is formed *docti-ssimus* most learned; Dat. *brevi*, is formed *brevi-ssimus* shortest *or* most short.

Obs. 1. The Comparative often signifies *excess*, or *too much*: as, *jactantior Ancus*—Virg.; or *rather*, as, *sum paullò infirmior*—Hor.

Obs. 2. The Superlative often signifies *very much*: as, *purissima mella very pure* honey—Virg. So, *Justissima tellus*—Virg.; *Optimus Virgilius*—Hor.

---

§ 27.—Adjectives ending in *er* form their Superlative Degree from the Nominative Case, by adding *rimus*: as, of *pulcher* fair, *pulcher-rĭmus* fairest *or* most fair; also, *vetus* makes *veterrĭmus*.

Adjectives ending in *lis* form their Superlative Degree according to the general rule: as, of *utilis* useful, Dat. *utili*, is formed *utili-ssimus* most useful.

Digitized by Google

Except the following, which change *is* into *lĭmus:* as,

Agil-is	nimble,	*agil-lĭmus*	nimblest, *or* most nimble.
Dŏcĭl-is	docile,	*dŏcĭl-limus*	most docile.
Facil-is	easy,	*facil-limus*	easiest.
Gracil-is	slender,	*gracil-limus*	slenderest.
Humil-is	low,	*humil-limus*	lowest.
Simil-is	like,	*simil-limus*	likest.

Adjectives in *-dicus, -ficus, -volus,* make *-cntior* and *entissimus:* as,

Male-dĭcus,	*-dicentior,*	*-dicentissimus.*
Bene-fĭcus,	*-ficentior,*	*-ficentissimus.*
Bene-vŏlus,	*-volentior,*	*-volentissimus.*

§ 28.—Many adjectives vary from these general rules, and form their comparison irregularly: as,

Positive.		*Comparative.*		*Superlative.*	
Bonus	good,	*melior*	better,	*optimus*	best.
Malus	bad,	*pejor*	worse,	*pessimus*	worst.
Magnus	great,	*major*	greater,	*maximus*	greatest.
Parvus	little,	*minor*	less,	*minimus*	least.
Multus	much,	*plus*	more,	*plurimus*	most.
Dives	rich,	*ditior*	more rich,	*ditissimus*	most rich.
Nĕquam	wicked,	*nĕquior*	more wicked,	*nĕquissimus*	most wicked.
Externus	outward,	*exterior*	more outward,	*extrēmus* vel *extĭmus*	most [outward.
Infĕrus	low,	*inferior*	lower,	*infĭmus* vel *īmus*	lowest.
Postĕrus	behind,	*posterior*	more behind,	*postremus* vel *postŭmus*	most [behind.
Sŭperus	high,	*sŭperior*	higher,	*suprēmus* vel *summus*	highest.
		Interior	more inward,	*intĭmus*	most inward.
Jŭvenis	young,	*jūnior*	younger *or* more young.		
Sĕnex	old,	*sĕnior*	older *or* more old.		
		Prior	former,	*prīmus*	first.
		Propior	nearer,	*proximus*	nearest.
		Citerior	hither,	*citĭmus*	most hither.
		Ulterior	further,	*ultĭmus*	last.
		Dēterior	less good,	*deterrimus*	least good.
		Anterior	more in front.		
		Sēquior	worse.		
(ὠκὺς	quick,)	*Ocior*	quicker,	*ocissimus*	quickest.

With some others.

Obs. 1. If a *vowel* comes before *us* in the Nominative Case of an Adjective, the comparison is usually made by *magis* more, and *maximē* most: as, *pius* godly, *magis pius* more godly, *maximē pius* most godly; except where *qu* precedes *us*, as *antiquus, antiquior; æquus, æquior.*

Obs. 2. *For* Comparison of Adverbs, *see under* Adverbs, below, § 84.

Digitized by Google

§ 29. — NUMERALS. (Gr. Gr. § 36.)

	Cardinals	Ordinals	Numeral Adverbs
	Answer the question, *Quot? How many?*	Answer the question, *Quotus? In which place?*	Answer the question. *Quoties? Quotiens? How often?*
I.	Un-us, -a, um	prim-us, -a, um	semel
II.	Du-o, -æ, -o	secundus, alter	bis
III.	Tres, tria	tertius	ter
IV.	Quatuor	quartus	quater
V.	Quinque	quintus	quinquies
VI.	Sex	sextus	sexies
VII.	Septem	septimus	septies
VIII.	Octo	octavus	octies
IX.	Novem	nonus	novies
X.	Decem	decimus	decies
XI.	Un-dĕcim	undecimus	undecies
XII.	Duo-decim	duodecimus	duodecies
XIII.	Tre-decim	tertiusdecimus	tredecies
XIV.	Quatuor-decim	quartusdecimus	quaterdecies
XV.	Quin-decim	quintusdecimus	quindecies
XVI.	Se-decim	sextusdecimus	sedecies
*XVII.	Septem-decim	septimusdecimus	septiesdecies
XVIII.	Duo-de-viginti	duodevicesimus	duodevicies
XIX.	Un-de-viginti	undevicesimus	undevicies
XX.	Viginti	vicesimus	vicies
†XXI.	Viginti unus, &c.	vicesimus primus	semel et vicies
XXVIII.	Duo-de-triginta	duodetricesimus	duodetricies
XXIX.	Un-de-triginta	undetricesimus	undetricies
XXX.	Triginta	tricesimus	tricies
XL.	Quadraginta	quadragesimus	quadragies
L.	Quinquaginta	quinquagesimus	quinquagies
LX.	Sexaginta	sexagesimus	sexagies
LXX.	Septuaginta	septuagesimus	septuagies
LXXX.	Octoginta	octogesimus	octogies
XC.	Nonaginta	nonagesimus	nonagies
XCIX.	Un-de-centum	undecentesimus	undecenties
C.	Centum	centesimus	centies
CC.	Ducent-i, -æ, -a	ducentesimus	ducenties
CCC.	Trecenti, &c.	trecentesimus	trecenties
CCCC.	Quadringenti	quadringentesimus	quadringenties
D.	Quingenti	quingentesimus	quingenties
DC.	Sexcenti	sexcentesimus	sexcenties
DCC.	Septingenti	septingentesimus	septingenties
DCCC.	Octingenti	octingentesimus	octingenties
CM.	Nongenti	nongentesimus	nongenties
M.	Mille	millesimus	millies
MM.	Duo millia	bis millesimus	bis millies.

* *Or* decem et septem. † *Or* unus et viginti.

Digitized by Google

	Distributives Answer the question, *Quoteni? How many to each?*	Multiplicatives Answer the question, *Quotuplex? How many fold?*	Proportionals Answer the question, *Quotuplus? How many times as great?*
1.	Singul-i, -æ, -a	simplex (ἁπλοῦς)	simplus
2.	Bini	duplex (διπλοῦς, κ. τ. λ.)	duplex (διπλάσιος)
3.	Terni	triplus	triplus (τριπλάσιος, κ. τ. λ.)
4.	Quaterni	quadruplex	quadruplus
5.	Quīni	quincuplex	quintuplus
6.	Sēni	sescuplex	sescuplus
7.	Septēni	septemplex	septuplus
8.	Octōni	octuplex	octuplus
9.	Noveni	novemplex	novuplus
10.	Dēni	decemplex	decuplus
11.	Un-deni	undecemplex	undecuplus
12.	Duo-deni	duodecemplex	duodecuplus
13.	Terni-deni	&c.	&c.
20.	Viceni	&c.	&c.
100.	Centeni	centuplex	centuplus
1000.	Milleni	&c.	&c.
2000.	Bis milleni	&c.	&c.

The first *three* Cardinals have been declined above.

From Four to One Hundred they are undeclinable. — (Cp. Gr. Gr § 36.)

All Ordinals are declined like *bonus*. — (Cp. Gr. Gr. § 36.)

---

§ 30. — *Obs.* 1. Examples of *Distributives:*

Sæpe tribus lectis videas cœnare *quaternos*. — *Hor.*

Quinas hic capiti mercedes exsecat. — *Hor.*

Obs. 2. *Ordinals* are used in Latin where *Cardinals* are used in English: as, *every four years*, quarto quoque anno.

Obs. 3. The Poets use the *Distributives* for *Cardinals:* as, Per *duodena* regit cœli Sol aureus astra — *Virg.*; especially with Substantives which have no singular; as, *binæ litteræ*, for *duæ*.

Obs. 4. In the Numerals up to *twenty*, the *smaller* number *precedes*, unless *et* is used: as, *septem decem, tertius decimus, decem et septem, decimus et tertius: after* twenty, the *reverse* of this is the case; as, *septem et triginta*, or *triginta septem*.

In Numerals above 100, the greater number precedes, with or without *et*.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 5. The Numerals *up to* 900,000 are formed by addition; *after* it by multiplication: thus,

For 1,000,000, say *decies centena millia*; or, simply, *decies*.

Obs. 6. Also *mille* (χίλιοι) used as an *Adjective* is undeclinable: as,

Tentat *mille* vafer *modis*. — *Hor.*

But *Mille*, a neuter *Substantive* (χιλιὰς) of the Third Declension, is declined, and takes a genitive after it:

Ille armatorum multis cum *millibus* ibat.
Millia frumenti tua triverit area centum. — *Hor*

——— scribit sibi *millia* quinque
Esse domi *chlamydum*. — *Hor.*.

——— positis intus Chii veterisque Falerni
Mille cadis, nihil est, tercentum *millibus*, acre
Potet acētum. — *Hor.*

TEMPORAL NUMERALS.

Year, of this year, *hornus*, *hornotinus*.

Year.	Month.
1. Anniculus	
2. Bimus	bimestris
3. Trimus	trimestris
4. Quadrimus	
6.	semestris
20. Vicenarius	
30. Tricenarius.	

Obs. 7. *Biennis* and *triennis* are not to be used, but their Derivatives, *biennium* and *triennium*, may be.

Obs. 8. The Neuters of Ordinals are used adverbially, as *Primo* or *Primum Consul*, *Secundum Consul*.

Obs. 9. To Numerals may be added the words *Unio*, *Ternio*, *Quaternio*, *Senio*.

Digitized by Google

§ 31.—OF A PRONOUN.

A PRONOUN is used instead of a Noun (*pro nomine*), and is declined with number, case, and gender.—(Gr. Gr. § 37.)

		Cujus-a,-um	whose?	*cujas* of what country?
Ego	I;	*meus*	mine.	
tu	thou or you;	*tuus*	thine.	
ille	he;	*noster*	ours;	*nostras* of our country.
is	he;	*vester*	yours;	*vestras* of your country.
sui	of himself;	*suus*	his own.	
ipse	he himself.			
iste	that.			
hic	this.			

To these may be added their compounds, *egomĕt* I myself; *tutĕ* thou thyself; *īdem* the same; also the relative *qui* who *or* what.

§ 32.—DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

PERSONAL.

Ego, tu, sui, are Pronouns *Personal,* and are thus declined:

	Singular.		*Plural.*	
N.	Ego	*I*	N. Nos	*we*
G.	Mei	*of me*	G. Nostrûm	*of us*
D.	Mihi (mī)	*to me*	D. Nobis	*to us*
A.	Me	*me*	A. Nos	*us*
V.	——		V. ——	
A.	Me	*from* or *by me.* (Cp. ἐγώ, Gr. Gr. § 37.)	A. Nobis	*from* or *by us.* (Cp. νώ, Gr. Gr. § 37.)

N.	Tu	*thou* or *you*	N. Vos	*ye* or *you*
G.	Tui	*of thee* or *you*	G. Vestrûm	*of you*
D.	Tibi	*to thee* or *you*	D. Vobis	*to you*
A.	Te	*thee* or *you*	A. Vos	*you*
V.	Tu	*o thou* or *you*	V. Vos	*o ye*
A.	Te	*from* or *by thee* or *you.* (Cp. σὺ, Gr. Gr. § 37.)	A. Vobis	*from* or *by you.* (Cp. σφώ, Gr. Gr. § 37.)

Digitized by Google

§ 33. — *Obs.* 1. The *Genitives nostrûm, vestrûm,* of us, of you, are equivalent to *ex nobis, ex vobis, i. e.* consisting of *or* taken from us *or* you: as, *unus nostrûm,* one of us.

Obs. 2. The Genitives *nostri, vestri* (in the phrases *amor nostri, memor vestri*), do not come from *nos, vos,* but from *noster, vester,* and are genitives singular of the neuter gender.

Obs. 3. *Venio tui videndi causâ* is said even of a *woman,* and not *videndæ.*

§ 34. — *Sui,* of himself, herself, itself, themselves, has no Nominative or Vocative Case, and is thus declined:

Singular and *Plural.*

G.	Sui	*of himself,*	*herself, itself, themselves,* &c.
D.	Sibi	*to himself,*	
A.	Sē *et* sēsē	*himself,*	
Ab.	Se *et* sese	*by himself,*	

(Cp. *οὗ,* Gr. Gr. § 37.)

§ 35. — POSSESSIVE.

Meus, tuus, suus, cujus, noster, vester are Pronouns *Possessive,* and declined like *bonus,* except that *meus* makes *mi* in the Vocative Case Singular *Masculine* (*mea* in *Feminine*); and *tuus, suus,* with many other Pronouns, have no Vocative Case.

(Cp. *ἐμὸς, σὸς, ἑὸς,* Gr. Gr. § 38.)

Sui and *suus* are called *Reciprocal* or *Reflexive* Pronouns, because they refer to the *Subject* of the sentence whose act reverts upon *himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*

Ex. — Scipiades Pœnos, proprios et vicit amores;
Vicit *Eos;* — sed *Se* vincere, majus erat. (See below, § 154.)

§ 36. — *Nostrās, vestras,* and *cujas* are declined like *felix,* thus: — Nom. *nostras,* Gen. *nostrātis.*

Hic has been declined above, p. 4.

Digitized by Google

§ 37.—DEMONSTRATIVE. (See below, § 154.)

Ille, illa, illud, he, she, that; and *ist-e, -a, -ud*, that; are Pronouns *Demonstrative*, and are thus declined:

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Ill-e	ill-a	ill-ud	Ill-i	ill-æ	ill-a
G.	Ill-ius			Ill-orum	ill-arum	ill-orum
D.	Ill-i			Ill-is		
A.	Ill-um	ill-am	ill-ud	Ill-os	ill-as	ill-a
V.	——			——		
A.	Ill-o	ill-â	ill-o.	Ill-is.		

Obs. OLLUS is an old form of *ille*.

In like manner is also declined *ipse* he himself, except that the Nominative and Accusative Cases Singular make *ipsum* (not *ipsud*) in the Neuter Gender.

Obs. Add, N. *illic* he *or* this man here, *illæc, illoc* or *illun*;
Ac. *illunc, illanc, illoc* or *illuc*;
Ab. *illoc, illâc, illoc*.
So, *isthic* that person there.

§ 38.—*Is, ea, id*, he, she, that, is thus declined:

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Is	ea	id	Ii	eæ	ea
G.	Ejus			Eorum	earum	eorum
D.	Ei			Iis *vel* eis.		
A.	Eum	eam	id	Eos	eas	ea
V.	——			——		
A.	Eo	eâ	eo.	Iis *vel* eis.		

(Cp. Gr. Gr. § 38.)

In like manner also is declined its compound *idem* (is-dem) the same: as, Nom. *idem, eădem, idem;* Gen. *ejusdem*, &c.

§ 39.— *Obs.* 1. *Is* refers to a person mentioned before, or one implied in the relative *qui*. *Idem* (*is-dem*) and *ipse* (*is-pse*) are emphatic for *Is*.

Obs. 2. The Genitive EJUS is very rare in *Poetry*; it is *never* used by Virgil, *twice* only by Horace in his Odes, and *twice* only by Ovid.

Obs. 3. *Iste* is very often in a *bad* sense: *Ille* in a *good*.

Digitized by Google

§ 40.—RELATIVE, INDEFINITE AND INTERROGATIVE.

Qui who, is a Pronoun *Relative*, and is thus declined:

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Qui	quæ	quod	Qui	quæ	quæ
G.	Cujus			Quorum	quarum	quorum
D.	Cui			Quibus *vel* queis		
A.	Quem	quam	quod	Quos	quas	quæ
V.	——			——		
A.	Quo / Quî	quâ / quî	quo *vel* / quî.	Quibus *vel* queis		

Indefinite and Interrogative.

So is declined also *qui, quæ, quod*, who *or* what? In like manner are also declined the compounds of *qui: quidam, quædam, quoddam* or *quiddam*, a *certain person* (whom I know, but do not wish to mention by name); *quivis, quilibet*, any one you choose; *quicunque* whosoever.

Quis, quæ, quid, who *or* what? is a Pronoun *Interrogative*, and is also declined like *qui*.

As is also *aliquis* some one (generally some *great* or *important* object); and other compounds of *quis* are also declined like *qui*, as *ecquis* who?

Quis, ecquis, and *aliquis* make the Feminine Gender of the Nominative Case Singular, and the Neuter of the Nominative and Accusative Cases Plural, in *quă*.

Examples of Qui *Interrogative.*

Qui gurges, aut *quæ* flumina lugubris
Ignara belli?—*quod* mare Dauniæ
Non decoloravere cædes?
Quæ caret ora cruore nostro? — *Hor.*

Obs. *Quid* and its compounds are used *substantively*, as *quid consilii?* *Quod* is used as an *Adjective*, as *quod consilium?*

Like *qui* are also declined *quisque* each, *unusquisque* every one, *quispiam* some one or other, *quisquam* any one at all.

Obs. *Quispiam* is not so particular and certain as *aliquis*.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1. *Quispiam* and *quisquam* are used only in the Singular.

Obs. 2. *Quisque* signifies *each* of persons really existing.

Quivis (ὁ τυχὼν), *any one* of persons whom you may suppose to exist.

Quilibet any one you choose.

Quotusquisque signifies *how few!* literally, of what (a small) amount is the every one! Ex. *Quotus* enim *quisque* disertus est?

Quisquis whosoever, is thus declined:

Nom. Quisquis, quidquid *vel* quicquid,
Acc. Quemquam, quidquid *vel* quicquid,
Abl. Quoquo, quâquâ, quoquo.

---

§ 41.—Examples *of Pronouns formed with* Qui *and* Quis.

Quicquid delirant Reges, plectuntur Achivi. — *Hor.*

Aude *aliquid* brevibus Gyaris et carcere dignum,
Si vis esse *aliquis*. — *Juv.*

Non recito *cuiquam* nisi amicis, idque coactus;
Non *ubivis*, coramve *quibuslibet*. — *Hor.*

An *quidquam* tanto nobis sit munere majus?

Occurrit *quidam* notus mihi nomine tantum.

Quælibet in *quemvis* opprobria fingere sævus.

Non *cuivis* homini contingit adire Corinthum.

Ut *cuique* est ætas, ita *quemque* facetus adopta.

Quisque suæ vitæ semina jacta metet.
Præsentem monstrat *quælibet* herba Deum.

Est *aliquid, quocunque* loco, *quocunque* recessu,
Unius sese dominum fecisse lacertæ. — *Juv.*

Quidam ait, 'est *aliquid*, non *quâvis* ire;' neque errat
Quisquam, quæque sequens optima, *quicquid* agit.

§ 42.— *Obs.* 1. *Quisquis*, whosoever, is more commonly used as a *Substantive*, and *Quicunque* as an *Adjective*: as,

Pindarum *quisquis* studet æmulari. — *Hor.*

Ne, *quicunque* Deus, *quicunque* adhibebitur heros. — *Hor.*

Obs. 2. *Quicunque* is often used with a *tmesis*.

Quem fors dierum *cunque* dabit, lucro appone. — *Hor.*

Digitized by Google

Obs. 3. *Quisquam* is more generally used as a Substantive, and *ullus* as an Adjective: as

Non istinc obliquo oculo mea commoda *quisquam*
Limat; — nec citharæ nec musæ deditus *ulli*. — *Hor.*

Obs. 4. *Quisquam* and *ullus* are only used with negatives and questions; and they *exclude all* persons, as *quivis* and *quilibet include all*.

Sis memor, includunt *Quivis* et *Quilibet* omnes;
Sed contra *Quisquam* cunctos excludit et *Ullus*.

§ 43.—SYLLABLES PREFIXED AND AFFIXED TO PRONOUNS.

Prefixes.

Ali (for *alius*) is prefixed to Pronouns: as, *ali-quis*.

Ec (*en! ecce!*) is prefixed to Pronouns: as,

Ecquis (*En! quis?*) me hodie vivit fortunatior?

Eccum, for *ecce eum*; *eccillam*, for *ecce illam*.

Ne is prefixed as a Negative to Pronouns: as, (*nĕ ŭter*) *neuter* (*oŏŭ-τερος*), neither of the two; (*ne ullus*) *nullus*, none; (*ne usquam*) *nusquam*, no where; (*ne unquam*) *nunquam*, never; (*ne homo*) *nēmo*, no one.

Obs. *Nēmo* takes its Genitive and Ablative from *nullus*; *neminis* and *nemine* being rarely used.

§ 44.—Affixes.

Ce, dem, met, pse, pte, te, are *added* to Pronouns, as *self* and *own* are in English:—

Ce, Cine are affixed to *hic*, as *hic-ce*, *il-lic* (for *ille-ce*), *istic* (for *iste-ce*), *hic-cine* (for *hicce-ne?*) interrogative. So also *siccine?*

Dem to *is*, as *idem* from *is-dem*: so to Numerals and Adverbs, as *totidem*, *item* (for *ita-dem*); *tantum-dem*, *tandem* (for *tamdem*).

Equidem is for *ego-quidem*, and is used with the *first* person singular: as,

Equidem de te nil tale verebar. — *Virg.*
Semina vidi *equidem* multos medicare serentes. — *Virg.*

Digitized by Google

METE is added to the Personal Pronouns *ego, tu, sui,* (especially before *ipse*), and to their Possessives, in all cases (except genitive plural), as *egomet, temet, semet;* except that for *tumet, tute* is used.

NAM and NUM are interrogative, as *quisnam? numquis?*

NE interrogative, as *tu-ne? me-ne?*

PSE is added to Pronouns of the Third Person, as *ipse* for *is-pse, reapse* for *re-eâ-pse.*

PTE is added to the Possessives *meus, tuus, suus,* in the Ablative Case, as *meâpte, suâpte.*

TE is added to Pronouns of the Second and Third Persons, as *tu-tĕ, is-te* (*iste*).

Also *dam, idem, piam, quam, que, cunque,* are added to Pronouns:—

DAM is demonstrative, as *quidam* a certain one; *quondam* (*quomdam*) at a certain time.

IDEM, to *tot*, as *totidem;* to *tantum*, as *tantumdem.*

PIAM and QUAM are added to *quis: piam*, affirmatively, as *quispiam;* *quam* negatively, as *quisquam.*

Add to these QUE (in the sense of *every*): *quis-que* every one, *ubi-que* every where, *cum-que* every when, *undi-que* every whence.

CUNQUE at each time (*cum-que*) to *qui:* as *quicunque* whosoever; so *qualiscunque, quotcunque, utcunque, ubicunque, quandocunque, undecunque, quocunque* — of what sort-, how many-, when- *or* how-, where-, when-, whence-, whither-, -soever.

§ 45.—OF A VERB.

A VERB expresses the *action* or *being* of a thing, and is usually the principal word (*verbum*) of a sentence. (Gr. Gr. § 39.)

§ 46.—Of VERBS there are two VOICES.

1. The *Active* (from *ago, actus—to do*): as, *amo* I love.

2. The *Passive* (from *patior, passus—to suffer*): as, *amor* I am loved.

Ex. — Otia *damnantur* quæ nulla negotiâ *tractant.*

Digitized by Google

Verbs are either TRANSITIVE or INTRANSITIVE.

A Verb is called *Transitive*, when the action passes on (*transit*) to a noun following: as, *vinco te* I conquer thee, *amo patrem* I love my father, *vera loquor* I speak the truth, *veneror Deum* I worship God.

A Verb is called *Intransitive*, when the action does not pass on to, or require, a noun following: as, *dormio* I sleep, *curro* I run, *sto* I stand, *glorior* I boast.

Of Verbs ending in *o* some are *Transitive*, as, *vinco* I conquer; and *o* is changed into *or* when these become Passive, as *vincor* I am conquered.

But in those in *o* which are *Intransitive*, as, *niteo* I shine, *o* cannot be changed into *or*.

Some Verbs ending in *or* are called *Deponents*, laying aside (*deponentia*) the Passive *signification*; and some are *Transitive*, as, *vera loquor* I speak the truth; some are *Intransitive*, as, *glorior* I boast.

Verbs Deponent are *declined* like Verbs Passive; but with Gerunds and Supines, like Verbs Active.

Those Intransitive Verbs which have in all their tenses an *Active form*, as, *lateo* I lie hid, are called *Neuters* (*neuter* neither, *i. e.* neither Active nor Passive).

Those Intransitives are named *Neuter-Passives*, which take a *Passive* form in the Perfect and tenses derived from it: as, *gaudeo* I am glad; Perfect, *gavisus sum*. So, *audeo* I dare; Perfect, *ausus sum*.

Those *Intransitives* are named *Neutral-Passives* which have an *Active form*, but a *Passive sense*, throughout: as, *vāpŭlo* I am beaten, *vēneo* I am sold (*venum eo* I go to sale), *exulo* I am banished.

Obs. Verbs in the Passive Voice often have a reflex sense: as, *lavimur we bathe*; as in the *Middle* Voice, λουόμεθα, in Greek. (Gr. Gr. § 39.)

Ex. — Medio agmine Turnus *vertitur*, arma tenens (*turns himself* τρέπεται). See below, Syntax, § 155.

Digitized by Google

Verbs that have different persons are called Verbs PERSONAL: as, *ego amo* I love, *tu amas* thou lovest.

But such as have not different persons are called Verbs IMPERSONAL: as, *tædet* it irketh, *oportet* it behoveth; where the *person* to whom the Verb refers is not expressed in the Nominative Case.

§ 47. — OF MOODS.

THERE are *four Moods.* (Gr. Gr. § 40.)

I. The first *mood* is called *Indicative*, and declares (*indĭcat*) a thing positively, or unconditionally: as, *ego amo* I love. Or it asks a question, as, *amas tu* dost thou love?

II. The second *mood* is called *Imperative*, and commands (*impĕrat*), or entreats: as, *veni huc* come hither, *parce mihi* spare me.

III. The third *mood* is called sometimes *Subjunctive*, sometimes *Potential.* It is called *Subjunctive* when it is *subjoined* to another clause going before it: as, *eram miser cum amarem* I was unhappy when I loved, *nescio qualis sit* I know not what sort of man he is.

It is called *Potential*, when it signifies *power* (*potentia*), *disposition, likelihood,* or *duty*; and is commonly known by these signs, *may, can, might, would, could, should* or *must:* as, *amem* I may love, *amarem* I might love.

The Potential sometimes expresses a *wish:* as *sis felix* may you be happy! and may be then called *Optative.* (Gr. Gr. § 40., Obs.)

It sometimes *exhorts* and *advises:* as, *eamus* let us go, *amemus patriam* let us love our country.

Examples of the POTENTIAL MOOD.

Garganum mugire *putes* nemus, aut mare Tuscum. — *Hor.*

Eloquar, an *sileam*? — *Virg.*

Mortalia facta peribunt,
Nedum sermonum *stet* honos et gratia vivax. — *Hor.*

Hoc Ithacus *velit*, et magno *mercentur* Atridæ. — *Virg.*

Digitized by Google

Quid *faceret?* quo se raptâ bis conjuge *ferret?*
Quo fletu Manes, quâ Numina voce *moveret?*
Proh Pudor! et nostris *illuserit* advena regnis!
Sis felix; nostrumque *leves*, quæcunque, laborem!—*Virg.*

Obs. In the following Conjugations, the word Subjunctive is used as a *common* term for the *Potential* as well as *Subjunctive;* but their *difference in power* should be remembered. It is sometimes called the *Conjunctive* Mood.

IV. The fourth *mood* is called *Infinitive*, and is so called (*infinitus* undefined*), because it has neither number nor person before it; and is known commonly by this sign, *to:* as, *amare* to love.

§ 48.—OF THE TENSES OF VERBS.

In Verbs there are *Six Tenses or Times* (*Tempŏra*), expressing the time of an action: the Present, the Preterimperfect, the Preterperfect, the Preterpluperfect, and two Futures. (Gr. Gr. § 41.)

1. The *Present* Tense speaks of a thing present, or now doing: as, *amo* I love *or* am loving.

2. The *Preterimperfect* Tense speaks of a thing that was being done, but not ended, at some time past: as, *amabam* I did love *or* was loving (*at that time*).

Obs. It sometimes expresses a *habit* or *custom;* sometimes a *desire* to do something, or a setting about it.

3. The *Preterperfect* Tense speaks of a thing done.

Obs. The Preterperfect has two distinct significations: one *Indefinite*, the other *Definite.* The first is rendered into English by *have*, the second is construed without *have:* as, *scripsi* I have written, *scripsi* I wrote.

The former answers to the Greek *Preterperfect;* as, γέγραφα *I have written:* the latter to the Greek Aorist; as, ἔγραψα I wrote.

* *Infinitivus* est, quod nec personas nec numeros *definit.* — Priscian, viii. 18. 69.

Digitized by Google

4. The *Preterpluperfect* Tense refers to a thing done at some time past, and then ended: as, *amaveram* I had loved.

Ex. — *Irruerant* Danai, et tectum omne *tenebant.*

5. The *First Future* Tense speaketh of a thing to be done hereafter: as, *amabo* I shall *or* will love.

6. The *Second Future* Tense (*Futurum Exactum*) speaketh of a thing which will have been done, when another thing has been done: as, *amavero* I shall have loved, *cum videro* when I shall have seen. — *Ex.* Ut sementem *feceris*, ita metes. — *Cic.*

§ 49. — The TENSES are either ABSOLUTE or RELATIVE.

ABSOLUTE. — 1. Present, *amo* I love. 2. Perfect, *amavi* I have loved. 3. Future, *amabo* I will love.

RELATIVE. — *i. e.* depending on some other action.

1. Imperfect, *amabam* I was loving — *i. e.* when something else happened.

2. Pluperfect, *amaveram* I had loved — *i. e.* when something else happened.

3. Perfect aorist, *amavi* I loved at some time — *i. e.* which I need not specify particularly.

4. Second Future, or Future Perfect, *amavero* I shall have loved — *i. e.* when something else has happened.

§ 50. — OF NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

VERBS have two Numbers, Singular and Plural, like unto Nouns, and three Persons in each Number: as,

Sing.		Plur.	
	Ego amo I love		*Nos amamus* we love
	Tu amas thou lovest		*Vos amatis* ye love
	Ille amat he loveth.		*Illi amant* they love.

§ 51. — OF GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

VERBS have *three* GERUNDS, ending in *di*, *do*, *dum*, which have commonly an active signification: as, *amandi* of loving, *amando* in loving, *amandum* to love.

Digitized by Google

Obs. The Gerunds are used as Oblique Cases of the Infinitive: as, *ars scribendi* the art of writing, *scribendo* by writing, *inter scribendum* during writing, where in Greek the Infinitive is used with the article, *τοῦ γράφειν, τῷ γράφειν, ἐν τῷ γράφειν.*

The SUPINES of VERBS are *two:*

The one ending in *um*, which signifies Actively: as, *eo amatum* I go to love.

The other ending in *u*, and having, for the most part, a Passive signification: as, *difficilis amatu* hard to be loved.

§ 52.— *Obs.* 1. The Supines, also, are Cases of Verbal Substantives of the Fourth Declension: thus, *amatum* is the Accusative Case from *amatus* (like *gradus*), and *amatu* the Ablative. — *Ex.* Paterfamilias primus *cubitu* surgat, postremus *cubitum* eat. — *Cato, R. R.*

Obs. 2. The Dative Case of these Substantives is found in some phrases: as, *habere despicatui, habere derisui.*

Obs. 3. The Future Tense Infinitive of the Passive Voice is formed of the Supine in *um*, and of *iri*, the Present Infinitive Passive (used impersonally) of the verb *eo* to go: as, Omnes vos *amatum iri* ab eo video — I see that you will be all loved by him (*literally*, that it is *being gone* by him to love you all).

Hence, the termination in *um* is never changed. — *Ex.* Arbitrantur se beneficos *visum iri* — *Cic.* They think that they themselves will appear benevolent (literally, *that it is being gone to see* them benevolent).

Obs. 4. Hence, when the Verb is *without a Supine*, the Future Passive must be formed in some other way; and it is then formed by *fore ut* followed by a Subjunctive Mood: as, *Spero fore, ut* hoc a te *discatur* — I hope that this will be learnt by you; *Sperabam fore, ut* hoc a te *disceretur* — I hoped that this would be learnt by you; Sperabam *futurum fuisse, ut* hoc a te *disceretur* — I hoped that this would have been learnt by you.

Obs. 5. Of Gerunds and Supines, see further below, § 70, Obs. 8—11.

§ 53.—OF A PARTICIPLE.

A PARTICIPLE is a part of speech derived from a Verb, and also taketh part (*partem capit*), as Number, Gender, Case, and Declension, of a Noun; and part of a Verb, as Tense and Signification.

Digitized by Google

§ 54. — There are Four PARTICIPLES.

Obs. 1. One of the Present Tense, which ends in *ans* or *ens:* as, amans *loving*, docens *teaching*.

Obs. Participials end in *bundus*, and express *fulness;* as, *mirabundus, cogitabundus, furibundus:* or *futurition*, as, *moribundus*, just about to die.

Obs. 2. One of the Future in *rus*, which signifies a *likelihood* or *design* of doing a thing: as, *amaturus* intending to love, *or* about to love.

Obs. 3. One of the Preterperfect Tense which has generally a *Passive* signification: as, *lectus* read, *doctus* taught, *visus* seen.

Obs. 4. One of the Future in *dus*, which also has a *Passive* signification, and expresses an action to be done hereafter: as, *amandus* to be loved.

Obs. Only Verbs which govern an *Accusative case* have any Participle in *dus*. Except *utendus, fungendus, fruendus, pœnitendus*, which are *sometimes*, though rarely, used: so *erubescendus.* — *Hor.*

Note. All Participles are declined like Nouns Adjective.

Obs. 5. The Latin Language doth not possess a Participle of the Perfect Active, nor of the Present Passive.

Instead of a Perfect Participle, *quum* with the Pluperfect Subjunctive is used; as, He, having come, *Quum venisset.*

Above all it is to be observed, that the Perfect Participle Active is supplied by the *Ablative Absolute Passive:* as, Antony, *having divorced* Octavia, the sister of Cæsar Octavianus, married Cleopatra, Queen of Egypt — *Antonius*, repudiatâ Octaviâ, *sorore Cæsaris Octaviani, Cleopatram, Reginam Ægypti, duxit uxorem.* — *Eutrop.*

Obs. But *Deponents* from their nature *have Perfect* Participles of an Active sense though Passive form.

Ex. Utilis interdum est ipsis injuria *passis.* — *Ov.*

Obs. 6. The *Present* Participle Passive is supplied by *quum* with the Present Indicative: as, He, being loved by you, is happy — *quum amatur a te, felix est.*

It is also supplied by the Preterperfect Participle: as, A certain peace

Digitized by Google

is better than a wished-for victory — *Melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria*; sometimes by the Future in *dus*, as, The praise of Thebes being freed is due to Pelopidas — *Liberandarum Thebarum propria laus est Pelopidæ.*

Examples of Participles.

Cantantes licet usque minus via lædit eamus. — *Virg.*
Plura *locuturi* subito diducimur imbre.
Pulsus Aristides patriâ Lacedæmŏna fugit. — *Ov.*
Threicio Regi furtim mandârat *alendum*. — *Virg.*
(See below, § 70.)

§ 55. — OF THE VERB *ESSE, to be.*

Before other Verbs are declined, it is necessary to learn the Verb *Esse*, to be.

Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus, to be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE — *Am.*

Sing.	Sum	*I am*
	Es	*thou art*
	Est	*he is.*
Plur.	Sumus	*We are*
	Estis	*ye are*
	Sunt	*they are.*

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE — *Was.*

Sing.	Er-am	*I was*
	Er-as	*thou wast*
	Er-at	*he was.*
Plur.	Er-āmus	*We were*
	Er-atis	*ye were*
	Er-ant	*they were.*

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE — *Have.*

Sing.	Fu-i	*I have been*
	Fu-isti	*thou hast been*
	Fu-it	*he has been.*
Plur.	Fu-ĭmus	*We have been*
	Fu-istis	*ye have been*
	Fu-ērunt *vel* fu-ēre	*they have been.*

Digitized by Google

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.—*Had.*

Sing.	Fu-ĕram	*I had been*
	Fu-eras	*thou hadst been*
	Fu-erat	*he had been.*
Plur.	Fu-erāmus	*We had been*
	Fu-eratis	*ye had been*
	Fu-erant	*they had been.*

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall* or *will.*

Sing.	Er-o	*I shall* or *will be*
	Er-is	*thou shalt* or *will be*
	Er-it	*he shall* or *will be.*
Plur.	Er-ĭmus	*We shall* or *will be*
	Er-itis	*ye shall* or *will be*
	Er-unt	*they shall* or *will be.*

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE.—*Shall have.*

Sing.	Fu-ero	*I shall have been*
	Fu-eris	*thou shalt have been*
	Fu-erit	*he shall have been.*
Plur.	Fu-erĭmus	*We shall have been*
	Fu-eritis	*ye shall have been*
	Fu-erint	*they shall have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE—*No first person.*

Sing.	Sis, es, esto	*Be thou*
	Sit, esto	*be he*, or *let him be.*
Plur.	Simus	*Be we*, or *let us be*
	Sitis, este, estōte	*be ye*
	Sint, sunto	*be they*, or *let them be.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*May* or *can.*

Sing.	Sim	*I may* or *can be*
	Sis	*thou mayst* or *canst be*
	Sit	*he may* or *can be.*
Plur.	Simus	*We may* or *can be*
	Sitis	*ye may* or *can be*
	Sint	*they may* or *can be.*

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Might* or *could.*

Sing.	Ess-em *vel* for-em	*I might* or *could be*
	Ess-es *vel* for-es	*thou mightst* or *couldst be*
	Ess-et *vel* for-et	*he might* or *could be.*
Plur.	Ess-ēmus *vel* for-ēmus	*We might* or *could be*
	Ess-etis *vel* for-etis	*ye might* or *could be*
	Ess-ent *vel* for-ent	*they might* or *could be.*

Digitized by Google

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE — *May have, should have, &c.*

Sing.	Fu-ĕrim	*I may* or *should have been*
	Fu-eris	*thou mayst* or *shouldst have been*
	Fu-erit	*he may* or *should have been.*
Plur.	Fu-erimus	*We may* or *should have been*
	Fu-eritis	*ye may* or *should have been*
	Fu-erint	*they may* or *should have been.*

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE — *Might, would have, &c.*

Sing.	Fu-issem	*I might* or *would have been*
	Fu-isses	*thou mightst* or *wouldst have been*
	Fu-isset	*he might* or *would have been.*
Plur.	Fu-issēmus	*We might* or *would have been*
	Fu-issetis	*ye might* or *would have been*
	Fu-issent	*they might* or *would have been.*

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

Sing.	Fu-tur-us, -a, -um	sim	*I*	*may be about to be.*
		sis	*you*	
		sit	*he*	
Plur.	Fu-tur-i, -æ, -a	simus	*We*	
		sitis	*ye*	
		sint	*they*	

The SECOND FUTURE Subjunctive is *Fuissem*, and sometimes *Futurus sim.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Esse *to be.*

PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Fuisse *to have been.*

FUTURE TENSE.

Fore, *vel* Futurum esse *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE OF THE FUTURE *in rus.*

Futurus, -a, -um, *about to be.*

(Compare εἰμί, Gr. Gr. § 80., with *sum*; and φύω, Gr. Gr. § 94., with *fui.*)

From the old verb *fuo* comes Præs. Subj. *fuam* for *sim*; *forem* and *fore*, are for *fuerem* and *fuere.*

Digitized by Google

§ 56.—Like *sum* are conjugated its compounds: as *absum* (*abfui, abesse, abfuturus*), *adsum, desum, intersum, præsum, prosum, supersum.*

Obs. 1. In *prosum, d* is inserted whenever a vowel follows *pro:* as, *prosum, prodes, prodest.*

Obs. 2. Only *absum, præsum, possum,* have Present Participles: viz. *absens, præsens, potens.* The rest have none. *Ων (*ons*) is found in the Latin *sons, sontĭcus* (*causa sontica*), and the dialectic *ens.*

Obs. 3. Example of First Future Subjunctive:

Quid *sit futurum* cras, fuge quærere. — *Hor.*

Obs. 4. For *sim, sis,* an old form, *siem, sies* is found.

§ 57.—VERBS REGULAR DECLINED.

THERE are Four Conjugations (or manners of declining) of Verbs, both in the Active and Passive voice.

The *First* Conjugation of Verbs Active hath *a* long before *re* and *ris,* as *amā-re, amā-ris.*

The *Second* hath *e* long before *re* and *ris,* as *monē-re, monē-ris.*

The *Third* hath *e* short before *re* and *ris,* as *regĕ-re, regĕ-ris.*

The *Fourth* has *i* long before *re* and *ris,* as *audī-re, audī-ris.*

§ 58.—VERBS ACTIVE in *O* are conjugated or declined after these examples following:

1. Am-o, am-ās, am-āvi, am-are; am-andi, am-ando, am-andum; am-ātum, am-ātu; am-ans, am-atūrus: *to love,*

(Compare τιμάω, Gr. Gr. § 43.)

2. Mon-eo, mon-ēs, mon-ŭi, mon-ēre; mon-endi, mon-endo, mon-endum; mon-ĭtum, mon-ĭtu; mon-ens, mon-itūrus; *to advise,*

(Cp. φιλέω, Gr. Gr. § 43.)

Digitized by Google

3. Reg-o, reg-ĭs, rex-i, reg-ĕre; reg-endi, reg-endo, reg-endum; rec-tum, rec-tu; reg-ens, rec-tūrus: *to rule or govern.*
(Cp. λέγω, Gr. Gr. § 49.)

4. Aud-io, aud-īs, aud-ivi, aud-īre; aud-iendi, aud-iendo, aud-iendum; aud-ītum, aud-ītu; aud-iens, aud-itūrus: *to hear.*
(Cp. τίω, Gr. Gr. § 52.)

Obs. On the Formation of the PERFECT and SUPINES, see below § 131, 132.

§ 59.—FIRST CONJUGATION—AMO.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Do, am.*

Sing.	Am-o	*I love, am loving*, or *do love*
	Am-as	*thou lovest, art loving*, or *dost love*
	Am-at	*he loveth, is loving*, or *doth love.*
Plur.	Am-āmus	*We love, are loving*, or *do love*
	Am-atis	*ye love, are loving*, or *do love*
	Am-ant	*they love, are loving*, or *do love.*

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Did, was.*

Sing.	Am-ābam	*I did love*, or *was loving*
	Am-abas	*thou didst love*, or *wast loving*
	Am-abat	*he did love*, or *was loving.*
Plur.	Am-abāmus	*We did love*, or *were loving*
	Am-abatis	*ye did love*, or *were loving*
	Am-abant	*they did love*, or *were loving.*

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Have.*

Sing.	Am-āvi	*I loved*, or *have loved*
	Am-avisti	*thou lovedst*, or *hast loved*
	Am-avit	*he loved*, or *hath loved.*
Plur.	Am-avĭmus	*We loved*, or *have loved*
	Am-avistis	*ye loved*, or *have loved*
	Am-avērunt *vel* -avere	*they loved*, or *have loved.*

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Had.*

Sing.	Am-avĕram	*I had loved*
	Am-averas	*thou hadst loved*
	Am-averat	*he had loved.*
Plur.	Am-averāmus	*We had loved*
	Am-averatis	*ye had loved*
	Am-averant	*they had loved.*

Digitized by Google

5. First Future Tense — *Shall, will.*

Sing.	Am-ābo	*I shall* or *will love*
	Am-abis	*thou shalt* or *wilt love*
	Am-abit	*he shall* or *will love.*
Plur.	Am-abĭmus	*We shall* or *will love*
	Am-abitis	*ye shall* or *will love*
	Am-abunt	*they shall* or *will love.*

6. Second Future Tense — *Shall have.*

Sing.	Am-avĕro	*I shall have loved*
	Am-averis	*thou shalt have loved*
	Am-averit	*he shall have loved.*
Plur.	Am-averimus	*We shall have loved*
	Am-averitis	*ye shall have loved*
	Am-averint	*they shall have loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense — *No first person.*

Sing.	Am-a, am-āto	*Love thou,* or *do thou love*
	Am-et, am-ato	*love he,* or *let him love.*
Plur.	Am-ēmus	*Love we,* or *let us love*
	Am-āte, am-atōte	*love ye,* or *do ye love*
	Am-ent, am-anto	*love they,* or *let them love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense — *May, can, would, should.*

Sing.	Am-em	*I may* or *can love*
	Am-es	*thou mayst* or *canst love*
	Am-et	*he may* or *can love.*
Plur.	Am-ēmus	*We may* or *can love*
	Am-etis	*ye may* or *can love*
	Am-ent	*they may* or *can love.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense — *Might, could, should.*

Sing.	Am-ārem	*I might* or *could love*
	Am-ares	*thou mightst* or *couldst love*
	Am-aret	*he might* or *could love.*
Plur.	Am-arēmus	*We might* or *could love*
	Am-aretis	*ye might* or *could love*
	Am-arent	*they might* or *could love.*

3. Preterperfect Tense — *Should have, may have.*

Sing.	Am-avĕrim	*I should have loved*
	Am-averis	*thou shouldst have loved*
	Am-averit	*he should have loved.*
Plur.	Am-averimus	*We should have loved*
	Am-averitis	*ye should have loved*
	Am-averint	*they should have loved.*

Digitized by Google

4. Preterpluperfect Tense — *Would, might, could have.*

Sing.	Am-avissem	*I would have loved*
	Am-avisses	*thou wouldst have loved*
	Am-avisset	*he would have loved.*
Plur.	Am-avissēmus	*We would have loved*
	Am-avissetis	*ye would have loved*
	Am-avissent	*they would have loved.*

5. First Future Tense.

Sing.	Am-atur-us, -a, -um	sim	*I*	*may be about to love.*
		sis	*you*	
		sit	*he*	
Plur.	Am-atur-i, -æ, -a	simus	*We*	
		sitis	*ye*	
		sint	*they*	

6. Second Future Tense.

Sing.	Am-atur-us, -a, -um	essem	*I*	*might be about to love.*
		esses	*you*	
		esset	*he*	
Plur.	Am-atur-i, -æ, -a	essemus	*We*	
		essetis	*ye*	
		essent	*they*	

Or, Am-aviss-em, -es, -et, -emus, -etis, -ent.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Am-āre — *to love.*

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Am-avissĕ — *to have loved.*

Future Tense.

Am-atūrum esse — *to be about to love.*

GERUNDS.

Am-andi	*of loving*
Am-ando	*in loving*
Am-andum	*to love.*

SUPINES.

Active.	*Passive.*
Am-ātum *to love.*	Am-ātu *to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.	Future *in rus.*
Am-ans *loving.*	Am-atūrus *about to love.*

Perfect *wanting.*—For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui am-aviss-em, -es, -et,* &c.

Digitized by Google

§ 60.—FORMATION OF TENSES.

Several Tenses are formed from the Preterperfect Tense of the Indicative Mood: thus, from *amav-i*—

1. The Preterpluperfect of the same mood, *amav-eram.*
2. The Second future Tense of the same mood, *amav-ero.*
3. The Preterperfect of the Potential Mood, *amav-erim.*
4. The Preterpluperfect of the same Mood, *amav-issem.*
5. The Preterperfect Tense of the Infinitive Mood, *amav-isse.*

§ 61. SECOND CONJUGATION—MONEO.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Do, am.*

Sing.	Mon-eo	*I advise, am advising,* or *do advise*
	Mon-es	*thou advisest, art advising,* or *dost advise*
	Mon-et	*he advises, is advising,* or *doth advise.*
Plur.	Mon-ēmus	*We advise, are advising,* or *do advise*
	Mon-etis	*ye advise, are advising,* or *do advise*
	Mon-ent	*they advise, are advising,* or *do advise.*

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Did, was.*

Sing.	Mon-ēbam	*I did advise,* or *was advising*
	Mon-ebas	*thou didst advise,* or *wast advising*
	Mon-ebat	*he did advise,* or *was advising.*
Plur.	Mon-ebāmus	*We did advise,* or *were advising*
	Mon-ebatis	*ye did advise,* or *were advising*
	Mon-ebant	*they did advise,* or *were advising.*

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Have.*

Sing.	Mon-ui	*I advised,* or *have advised*
	Mon-uisti	*thou advisedst,* or *hast advised*
	Mon-uit	*he advised,* or *hath advised.*
Plur.	Mon-uĭmus	*We advised,* or *have advised*
	Mon-uistis	*ye advised,* or *have advised*
	Mon-uērunt *vel* -uēre	*they advised,* or *have advised.*

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Had.*

Sing.	Mon-uĕram	*I had advised*
	Mon-ueras	*thou hadst advised*
	Mon-uerat	*he had advised.*
Plur.	Mon-uerāmus	*We had advised*
	Mon-ueratis	*ye had advised*
	Mon-uerant	*they had advised.*

Digitized by Google

5. First Future Tense — *Shall* or *will.*

Sing.	Mon-ēbo	*I shall* or *will advise*
	Mon-ebis	*thou shalt* or *wilt advise*
	Mon-ebit	*he shall* or *will advise.*
Plur	Mon-ebĭmus	*We shall* or *will advise*
	Mon-ebitis	*ye shall* or *will advise*
	Mon-ebunt	*they shall* or *will advise.*

6. Second Future Tense — *Shall have.*

Sing.	Mon-uĕro	*I shall have advised*
	Mon-ueris	*thou shalt have advised*
	Mon-uerit	*he shall have advised.*
Plur.	Mon-uerimus	*We shall have advised*
	Mon-ueritis	*ye shall have advised*
	Mon-uerint	*they shall have advised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense — *No first person.*

Sing.	Mon-e, mon-ēto	*Advise thou*, or *do thou advise*
	Mon-eat, mon-eto	*advise he*, or *let him advise.*
Plur.	Mon-eāmus	*Advise we*, or *let us advise*
	Mon-ēte, mon-etōte	*advise ye*, or *do ye advise*
	Mon-eant, mon-ento	*advise they*, or *let them advise.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense — *May, can, would, should.*

Sing.	Mon-eam	*I may* or *can advise*
	Mon-eas	*thou mayst* or *canst advise*
	Mon-eat	*he may* or *can advise.*
Plur.	Mon-eāmus	*We may* or *can advise*
	Mon-eatis	*ye may* or *can advise*
	Mon-eant	*they may* or *can advise.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense — *Might, could, should.*

Sing.	Mon-ērem	*I might* or *could advise*
	Mon-eres	*thou mightst* or *couldst advise*
	Mon-eret	*he might* or *could advise.*
Plur.	Mon-erēmus	*We might* or *could advise*
	Mon-eretis	*ye might* or *could advise*
	Mon-erent	*they might* or *could advise.*

3. Preterperfect Tense — *Should have, may have.*

Sing.	Mon-uĕrim	*I should have advised*
	Mon-ueris	*thou shouldst have advised*
	Mon-uerit	*he should have advised.*
Plur.	Mon-uerimus	*We should have advised*
	Mon-ueritis	*ye should have advised*
	Mon-uerint	*they should have advised.*

Digitized by Google

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Would, might, could have.*

Sing.	Mon-uissem	*I would have advised*
	Mon-uisses	*thou wouldst have advised*
	Mon-uisset	*he would have advised.*
Plur.	Mon-uissēmus	*We would have advised*
	Mon-uissetis	*ye would have advised*
	Mon-uissent	*they would have advised.*

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

Sing.	Mon-itur-us, -a, -um	sim	*I*	*may be about to advise.*
		sis	*you*	
		sit	*he*	
Plur.	Mon-itur-i, -æ, -a	simus	*We*	
		sitis	*ye*	
		sint	*they*	

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

Sing.	Mon-itur-us, -a, -um	essem	*I*	*might be about to advise.*
		esses	*you*	
		esset	*he*	
Plur.	Mon-itur i, -æ, -a	essemus	*We*	
		essetis	*ye*	
		essent	*they*	

Or, Mon-uiss-em, -es, -et, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Mon-ēre *to advise.*

PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mon-uisse *to have advised.*

FUTURE TENSE.

Mon-itūrum esse *to be about to advise.*

GERUNDS.

Mon-endi	*of advising*
Mon-endo	*in advising*
Mon-endum	*to advise.*

SUPINES.

Active.	*Passive.*
Mon-ĭtum *to advise.*	Mon-ĭtu *to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT TENSE.	FUTURE *in rus.*
Mon-ens *advising.*	Mon-itūrus *about to advise.*

PERFECT *wanting.*—For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui mon-uiss-em, -es, -et,* &c.

Digitized by Google

§ 62.—THIRD CONJUGATION—REGO.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Do, am.*

Sing.	Reg-o	*I rule, am ruling*, or *do rule*
	Reg-is	*thou rulest, art ruling*, or *dost rule*
	Reg-it	*he ruleth, is ruling*, or *doth rule.*
Plur.	Reg-ĭmus	*We rule, are ruling*, or *do rule*
	Reg-itis	*ye rule, are ruling*, or *do rule*
	Reg-unt	*they rule, are ruling*, or *do rule.*

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Did, was.*

Sing.	Reg-ēbam	*I did rule*, or *was ruling*
	Reg-ebas	*thou didst rule*, or *wast ruling*
	Reg-ebat	*he did rule*, or *was ruling.*
Plur.	Reg-ebāmus	*We did rule*, or *were ruling*
	Reg-ebatis	*ye did rule*, or *were ruling*
	Reg-ebant	*they did rule*, or *were ruling.*

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Have.*

Sing.	Rex-i	*I ruled*, or *have ruled*
	Rex-isti	*thou ruledst*, or *hast ruled*
	Rex-it	*he ruled*, or *hath ruled.*
Plur.	Rex-ĭmus	*We ruled*, or *have ruled*
	Rex-istis	*ye ruled*, or *have ruled*
	Rex-ĕrunt *vel* -ēre	*they ruled*, or *have ruled.*

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Had.*

Sing.	Rex-ĕram	*I had ruled*
	Rex-eras	*thou hadst ruled*
	Rex-erat	*he had ruled.*
Plur.	Rex-erāmus	*We had ruled*
	Rex-eratis	*ye had ruled*
	Rex-erant	*they had ruled.*

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall* or *will.*

Sing.	Reg-am	*I shall* or *will rule*
	Reg-es	*thou shalt* or *wilt rule*
	Reg-et	*he shall* or *will rule.*
Plur.	Reg-ēmus	*We shall* or *will rule*
	Reg-etis	*ye shall* or *will rule*
	Reg-ent	*they shall* or *will rule.*

Digitized by Google

6. Second Future Tense — *Shall have.*

Sing.	Rex-ĕro	*I shall have ruled*
	Rex-eris	*thou shalt have ruled*
	Rex-erit	*he shall have ruled.*
Plur.	Rex-erimus	*We shall have ruled*
	Rex-eritis	*ye shall have ruled*
	Rex-erint	*they shall have ruled.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense — *No first Person.*

Sing.	Reg-e, reg-ĭto	*Rule thou*, or *do thou rule*
	Reg-at, reg-ito	*rule he*, or *let him rule.*
Plur.	Reg-āmus	*Rule we*, or *let us rule*
	Reg-ĭte, Reg-itōte	*rule ye*, or *do ye rule*
	Reg-ant, reg-unto	*rule they* or *let them rule.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense — *May, can, would, should.*

Sing.	Reg-am	*I may* or *can rule*
	Reg-as	*thou mayst* or *canst rule*
	Reg-at	*he may* or *can rule.*
Plur.	Reg-āmus	*We may* or *can rule*
	Reg-atis	*ye may* or *can rule*
	Reg-ant	*they may* or *can rule.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense — *Might, could, should.*

Sing.	Reg-ĕrem	*I might* or *could rule*
	Reg-eres	*thou mightst* or *couldst rule*
	Reg-eret	*he might* or *could rule.*
Plur.	Reg-erēmus	*We might* or *could rule*
	Reg-eretis	*ye might* or *could rule*
	Reg-erent	*they might* or *could rule.*

3. Preterperfect Tense — *Should have, may have.*

Sing.	Rex-ĕrim	*I should have ruled*
	Rex-eris	*thou shouldst have ruled*
	Rex-erit	*he should have ruled.*
Plur.	Rex-erimus	*We should have ruled*
	Rex-eritis	*ye should have ruled*
	Rex-erint	*they should have ruled.*

4. Preterpluperfect Tense — *Would, might, could have.*

Sing.	Rex-issem	*I would have ruled*
	Rex-isses	*thou wouldst have ruled*
	Rex-isset	*he would have ruled.*
Plur.	Rex-issēmus	*We would have ruled*
	Rex-issetis	*ye would have ruled*
	Rex-issent	*they would have ruled.*

Digitized by Google

5. First Future Tense.

Sing. Rec-tur-us, -a, -um	sim	*I*	*may be about to rule.*
	sis	*you*	
	sit	*he*	
Plur. Rec-tur-i, -æ, -a,	simus	*We*	
	sitis	*ye*	
	sint	*they*	

6. Second Future Tense.

Sing. Rec-tur-us, -a, -um	essem	*I*	*might be about to rule.*
	esses	*you*	
	esset	*he*	
Plur. Rec-tur-i, -æ, -a,	essemus	*We*	
	essetis	*ye*	
	essent	*they*	

Or, Rex-iss-em, -es, -et, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Reg-ĕre — *to rule.*

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Rex-isse — *to have ruled.*

Future Tense.

Rec-tūrum esse — *to be about to rule.*

GERUNDS.

Reg-endi — *of ruling*
Reg-endo — *in ruling*
Reg-endum — *to rule.*

SUPINES.

Active.	*Passive.*
Rec-tum *to rule.*	Rec-tu *to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.	Future *in rus.*
Reg-ens *ruling.*	Rec-tūrus *about to rule.*

Perfect *wanting.*—For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui rex-iss-em,-es, -et*, &c.

Obs. There are certain Verbs in *io* which belong to the *Third* Conjugation, as *capio, rapio, cupio, facio, fodio, fugio*, &c., and their compounds. These retain the *i* only in those tenses where *r* does not follow, *i. e.* only in the Imperfect Indicative (which may not be contracted into *-ibam*), and Future Indicative and Present Subjunctive; but where either *r* or *no* letter follows, they take *ĕ*, both in the Active and Passive Voice: as, *capio, capĕ, capĕrem, capĕre.* So in the Passive, *cap-ior, -ĕris, -ĕrer*; and Deponents, as *pat-ior, -ĕris, -ĕrer.* So, *morior.* See below, § 71.

Digitized by Google

§ 63.—FOURTH CONJUGATION—AUDIO.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Do, am.*

Sing.	Aud-io	*I hear, am hearing*, or *do hear*
	Aud-is	*thou hearest, art hearing*, or *dost hear*
	Aud-it	*he heareth, is hearing*, or *doth hear.*
Plur.	Aud-īmus	*We hear, are hearing*, or *do hear*
	Aud-itis	*ye hear, are hearing*, or *do hear*
	Aud-iunt	*they hear, are hearing*, or *do hear.*

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Did, was.*

Sing.	Aud-iēbam	*I did hear*, or *was hearing*
	Aud-iebas	*thou didst hear*, or *wast hearing*
	Aud-iebat	*he did hear*, or *was hearing.*
Plur.	Aud-iebāmus	*We did hear*, or *were hearing*
	Aud-iebatis	*ye did hear*, or *were hearing*
	Aud-iebant	*they did hear*, or *were hearing.*

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Have.*

Sing.	Aud-ivi	*I heard*, or *have heard*
	Aud-ivisti	*thou heardst*, or *hast heard*
	Aud-ivit	*he heard*, or *hath heard.*
Plur.	Aud-ivĭmus	*We heard*, or *have heard*
	Aud-ivistis	*ye heard*, or *have heard*
	Aud-ivērunt *vel* -ivēre	*they heard*, or *have heard.*

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Had.*

Sing.	Aud-ivĕram	*I had heard*
	Aud-iveras	*thou hadst heard*
	Aud-iverat	*he had heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iverāmus	*We had heard*
	Aud-iveratis	*ye had heard*
	Aud-iverant	*they had heard.*

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall* or *will.*

Sing.	Aud-iam	*I shall* or *will hear*
	Aud-ies	*thou shalt* or *wilt hear*
	Aud-iet	*he shall* or *will hear.*
Plur.	Aud-iēmus	*We shall* or *will hear*
	Aud-ietis	*ye shall* or *will hear*
	Aud-ient	*they shall* or *will hear*

Digitized by Google

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE — *Shall have.*

Sing.	Aud-ivĕro	*I shall have heard*
	Aud-iveris	*thou shalt have heard*
	Aud-iverit	*he shall have heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iverimus	*We shall have heard*
	Aud-iveritis	*ye shall have heard*
	Aud-iverint	*they shall have heard.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE — *No first Person.*

Sing.	Aud-ī, aud-īto	*Hear thou*, or *do thou hear*
	Aud-iat, aud-ito	*hear he*, or *let him hear.*
Plur.	Aud-iāmus	*Hear we*, or *let us hear*
	Aud-īte, aud-itōte	*hear ye*, or *do ye hear*
	Aud-iant, aud-iunto	*hear they*, or *let them hear.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE — *May, can, would, should.*

Sing.	Aud-iam	*I may* or *can hear*
	Aud-ias	*thou mayst* or *canst hear*
	Aud-iat	*he may* or *can hear.*
Plur.	Aud-iāmus	*We may* or *can hear*
	Aud-iatis	*ye may* or *can hear*
	Aud-iant	*they may* or *can hear.*

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE — *Might, could, should.*

Sing.	Aud-īrem	*I might* or *could hear*
	Aud-ires	*thou mightst* or *couldst hear*
	Aud-iret	*he might* or *could hear.*
Plur.	Aud-irēmus	*We might* or *could hear*
	Aud-iretis	*ye might* or *could hear*
	Aud-irent	*they might* or *could hear.*

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE — *Should have, may have.*

Sing	Aud-ivĕrim	*I should have heard*
	Aud-iveris	*thou shouldst have heard*
	Aud-iverit	*he should have heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iverimus	*We should have heard*
	Aud-iveritis	*ye should have heard*
	Aud-iverint	*they should have heard*

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE — *Would, might, could have.*

Sing.	Aud-ivissem	*I would have heard*
	Aud-ivisses	*thou wouldst have heard.*
	Aud-ivisset	*he would have heard.*
Plur.	Aud-ivissēmus	*We would have heard*
	Aud-ivissetis	*ye would have heard.*
	Aud-ivissent	*they would have heard.*

Digitized by Google

5. First Future Tense.

Sing. Aud-itur-us, -a, -um	sim	*I*	*may be about to hear.*
	sis	*you*	
	sit	*he*	
Plur. Aud-itur-i, -æ, -a	simus	*We*	
	sitis	*ye*	
	sint	*they*	

6. Second Future Tense.

Sing. Aud-itur-us, -a, -um	essem	*I*	*might be about to hear.*
	esses	*you*	
	esset	*he*	
Plur. Aud-itur-i, -æ, -a	essemus	*We*	
	essetis	*ye*	
	essent	*they*	

Or, Aud-iviss-em, -es, -et, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Aud-īre — *to hear.*

Preterpeerfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Aud-ivisse — *to have heard.*

Future Tense.

Aud-itūrum esse — *to be about to hear.*

GERUNDS.

Aud-iendi	*of hearing*
Aud-iendo	*in hearing*
Aud-iendum	*to hear.*

SUPINES.

Active.	*Passive.*
Aud-ītum *to hear.*	Aud-ītu *to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.	Future *in rus.*
Aud-iens *hearing.*	Aud-itūrus *about to hear.*

Perfect *wanting.*— For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui aud-iviss-em, -es, -et*, &c.

§ 64.— OBSERVATIONS ON THE TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE.

Obs. 1. The Imperfect of the Fourth Conjugation is sometimes contracted into *ībam*, as *lenībat, vestībat* (Virgil), for *leniebat, vestiebat.*

Digitized by Google

Obs. 2. In the Perfect, and Tenses formed from it, *v* is often thrown out, and the first *i* shortened: as *audĭi* for *audīvi*, *audĭerem* for *audīverim*.

Obs. 3. In other Perfects this *syncŏpē*, or shortening by absorption, occurs where *r* or *s* follows *ve* or *vi*; as, *laudārunt* for *laudavērunt*, *laudāstis* for *laudavistis*, *tristi* for *trivisti* (Catull.).

Obs. 4. So *summôram*, *summôssem*, *summôsse*, for *summovĕram*, *summovissem*, *summovisse*; and in old Latin writers, *evâsti* for *evasisti*, *surrexe* for *surrexisse*, *levasso* for *levavero*, *adjūro* for *adjūvĕro*.

Obs. 5. The following Verbs, *dīco*, *dūco*, *făcio*, *fĕro*, suffer *apocŏpē* in the Second Person Singular of their Imperatives: as, *dīc*, *auc*, *fac*, *fer*, for *dīce*, *dūce*, *făce*, *fĕre*: so *fi* from *fīo*, to be made.

Obs. 6. The Futures of the Subjunctive are formed by the Future in *rus* and the Verb *sum*. Ex. — Doubt not that I will come — Ne dubites quin *venturus sim*.

Obs. 7. The Future in *rus* makes with the Verb *sum* a Conjugation of its own, which expresses *intention* or *wish* to do a thing; as,

	Indicative.		Subjunctive.		
Amaturus	sum	*I am*	sim	*I may be*	*about to love.*
	eram	*I was*	essem	*I might be*	
	fui	*I have been*	fuerim	*I might have been*	
	fueram	*I had been*	fuissem	*I shall have been*	
	ero	*I shall be*			
	fuero	*I shall have been*			

This is sometimes called the *Periphrastic* or *Circumlocutory* (*περὶ circum*, *φράζω loquor*) *Conjugation*. (See § 70.)

Ex. — Musæ Plautino sermone *locuturæ fuissent*, si Latinè loqui vellent.

Obs. 8. Many of the Latin Forms of Verbs are derived from the Greek, through the *Æolic* Dialect: as *λέγομες legimus*; *λέγοντι legunt*; *ἱστὰνς sistens*; *ἔδειξασθα dixisti*.

Obs. 9. Some Verbs belong to two Conjugations: as, *lavo*, *lavare* and *lavĕre*; so, *fervĕre* and *fervĕre*.

Obs. 10. The forms in *-to* of the Imperative are *emphatic*, and are used in Legal Edicts, Medical Prescriptions, and other *didactic* Formulæ, as,

Censores bini sunto.

Ter uncti
Transnanto *Tiberim somno quibus est opus alto.* — Hor.
Laudato *ingentia rura*,
Exiguum colito. — Virg.

Digitized by Google

§ 65.—DECLENSION OF VERBS PASSIVE.

1. Am-or, am-āris *vel* am-are, am-atus sum *vel* fui, am-ari; am-atus, am-andus: *to be loved.*

2. Mon-eor, mon-ēris *vel* mon-ere, mon-ĭtus sum *vel* fui, mon-eri; mon-ĭtus, mon-endus: *to be advised.*

3. Re-gor, reg-ĕris *vel* reg-ere, rec-tus sum *vel* fui, reg-i; rec-tus, reg-endus: *to be ruled.*

4. Aud-ior, aud-īris *vel* aud-ire, aud-ītus sum *vel* fui, aud-iri; aud-ītus, aud-iendus: *to be heard.*

§ 66.—FIRST CONJUGATION—AMOR.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Am.*

Sing.	Am-or	*I am loved*
	Am-āris *vel* am-are	*thou art loved*
	Am-atur	*he is loved.*
Plur.	Amāmur	*We are loved*
	Am-amĭni	*ye are loved*
	Am-antur	*they are loved.*

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Was.*

Sing.	Am-ābar	*I was loved*
	Am-abāris *vel* am-abare	*thou wast loved*
	Am-abatur	*he was loved.*
Plur.	Am-abamur	*We were loved*
	Am-abamĭni	*ye were loved.*
	Am-abantur	*they were loved.*

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Have been.*

Sing.	Am-atus sum *vel* fui	*I have been loved*
	Am-atus es *v.* fuisti	*thou hast been loved*
	Am-atus est *v.* fuit	*he has been loved.*
Plur.	Am-ati sumus *v.* fuimus	*We have been loved*
	Am-ati estis *v.* fuistis	*ye have been loved*
	Am-ati sunt, fuerunt *v.* fuere	*they have been loved.*

Digitized by Google

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Had been.*

Sing.	Am-atus eram *vel* fuĕram	*I had been loved*
	Am-atus eras *v.* fueras	*thou hadst been loved*
	Am-atus erat *v.* fuerat	*he had been loved.*
Plur.	Am-ati eramus *v.* fueramus	*We had been loved*
	Am-ati eratis *v.* fueratis	*ye had been loved*
	Am-ati erant *v.* fuerant	*they had been loved.*

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall* or *will be.*

Sing.	Am-abor	*I shall* or *will be loved*
	Am-abĕris *vel* am-abere	*thou shalt* or *wilt be loved*
	Am-abĭtur	*he shall or will be loved.*
Plur.	Am-abimur	*We shall or will be loved*
	Am-abĭmini	*ye shall* or *will be loved*
	Am-abuntur	*they shall* or *will be loved.*

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE — *Shall have been.*

Sing.	Am-atus ero *vel* fuero	*I shall have been loved*
	Am-atus eris *v.* fueris	*thou shalt have been loved*
	Am-atus erit *v.* fuerit	*he shall have been loved.*
Plur.	Am-ati erimus *v.* fuerimus	*We shall have been loved*
	Am-ati eritis *v.* fueritis	*ye shall have been loved*
	Am-ati erunt *v.* fuerint	*they shall have been loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE—*No first Person.*

Sing.	Am-are, am-ātor	*Be thou loved*
	Am-ētur, am-ator	*let him be loved.*
Plur.	Am-emur	*Let us be loved*
	Am-amĭni, am-aminor	*be ye loved*
	Am-entur, am-antor	*let them be loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*May, can, would, should be.*

Sing.	Am-er	*I may* or *can be loved*
	Am-ēris *vel* am-ere	*thou mayst* or *canst be loved*
	Am-etur	*he may* or *can be loved.*
Plur.	Am-emur	*We may* or *can be loved*
	Am-emini	*ye may* or *can be loved*
	Am-entur	*they may* or *can be loved.*

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, should be.*

Sing.	Am-arer	*I might* or *could be loved*
	Am-arēris *vel* am-arere	*thou mightst* or *couldst be loved*
	Am-aretur	*he might* or *could be loved.*
Plur.	Am-aremur	*We might* or *could be loved*
	Am-aremini	*ye might* or *could be loved*
	Am-arentur	*they might* or *could be loved.*

Digitized by Google

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*May, should have been.*

Sing.	Am-atus sim *vel* fuerim	*I should have been loved*
	Am-atus sis *v.* fueris	*thou shouldst have been loved*
	Am-atus sit *v.* fuerit	*he should have been loved.*
Plur.	Am-ati simus *v.* fuerimus	*We should have been loved*
	Am-ati sitis *v.* fueritis	*ye should have been loved*
	Am-ati sint *v.* fuerint	*they should have been loved.*

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, would have been*

Sing.	Am-atus essem *vel* fuissem	*I would have been loved*
	Am-atus esses *v.* fuisses	*thou wouldst have been loved*
	Am-atus esset *v.* fuisset	*he would have been loved.*
Plur.	Am-ati essemus *v.* fuissemus	*We would have been loved*
	Am-ati essetis *v.* fuissetis	*ye would have been loved*
	Am-ati essent *v.* fuissent	*they would have been loved.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ari — *to be loved.*

PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Am-atum esse *vel* fuisse — *to have been loved.*

FUTURE TENSE.

Am-atum iri — *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT TENSE *wanting.*—For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui am-or, -āris, -ātur.*

PRETERPERFECT TENSE.		FUTURE *in dus.*	
Am-atus	*loved* or *being loved.*	Am-andus	*to be loved.*

§ 67.—SECOND CONJUGATION—MONEOR.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Am.*

Sing.	Mon-eor	*I am advised*
	Mon-ēris *vel* mon-ere	*thou art advised*
	Mon-etur	*he is advised.*
Plur.	Mon-emur	*We are advised*
	Mon-emini	*ye are advised*
	Mon-entur	*they are advised.*

Digitized by Google

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE — *Was.*

Sing.	Mon-ēbar	*I was advised*
	Mon-ebāris *vel* mon-ebare	*thou wast advised*
	Mon-ebatur	*he was advised.*
Plur.	Mon-ebamur	*We were advised*
	Mon-ebamini	*ye were advised*
	Mon-ebantur	*they were advised.*

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE — *Have been.*

Sing.	Mon-ĭtus sum *vel* fui	*I have been advised*
	Mon-itus es *v.* fuisti	*thou hast been advised*
	Mon-itus est *v.* fuit	*he hath been advised.*
Plur.	Mon-iti sumus *v.* fuimus	*We have been advised*
	Mon-iti estis *v.* fuistis	*ye have been advised*
	Mon-iti sunt, fuerunt *v.* fuere	*they have been advised.*

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE — *Had been.*

Sing.	Mon-itus eram *vel* fueram	*I had been advised*
	Mon-itus eras *v.* fueras	*thou hadst been advised*
	Mon-itus erat *v.* fuerat	*he had been advised*
Plur.	Mon-iti eramus *v.* fueramus	*We had been advised*
	Mon-iti eratis *v.* fueratis	*ye had been advised*
	Mon-iti erant *v.* fuerant	*they had been advised.*

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE — *Shall* or *will be.*

Sing.	Mon-ēbor	*I shall* or *will be advised*
	Mon-ebĕris *vel* mon-ebere	*thou shalt* or *wilt be advised*
	Mon-ebitur	*he shall* or *will be advised.*
Plur.	Mon-ebimur	*We shall* or *will be advised*
	Mon-ebimini	*ye shall* or *will be advised*
	Mon-ebuntur	*they shall* or *will be advised.*

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE — *Shall have been.*

Sing.	Mon-itus ero *vel* fuero	*I shall have been advised*
	Mon-itus eris *v.* fueris	*thou shalt have been advised*
	Mon-itus erit *v.* fuerit	*he shall have been advised.*
Plur.	Mon-iti erĭmus *v.* fuerimus	*We shall have been advised*
	Mon-iti eritis *v.* fueritis	*ye shall have been advised*
	Mon-iti erunt *v.* fuerint	*they shall have been advised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE — *No first Person.*

Sing.	Mon-ēre, mon-etor	*Be thou advised*
	Mon-eatur, mon-etor	*let him be advised.*
Plur.	Mon-eamur	*Let us be advised*
	Mon-emini, mon-eminor	*be ye advised*
	Mon-eantur, mon-entor	*let them be advised.*

Digitized by Google

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*May, can, would, should be.*

Sing.	Mon-ear	*I may* or *can be advised*
	Mon-eāris *vel* mon-eare	*thou mayst* or *canst be advised*
	Mon-eatur	*he may* or *can be advised.*
Plur.	Mon-eamur	*We may* or *can be advised*
	Mon-eamini	*ye may* or *can be advised*
	Mon-eantur	*they may* or *can be advised.*

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, should be.*

Sing.	Mon-ērer	*I might* or *could be advised*
	Mon-erēris *v.* mon-erere	*thou mightst* or *couldst be advised*
	Mon-eretur	*he might* or *could be advised.*
Plur.	Mon-eremur	*We might* or *could be advised*
	Mon-eremini	*ye might* or *could be advised*
	Mon-erentur	*they might* or *could be advised.*

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*May, should have been.*

Sing.	Mon-ĭtus sim *vel* fuerim	*I should have been advised*
	Mon-itus sis *v.* fueris	*thou shouldst have been advised*
	Mon-itus sit *v.* fuerit	*he should have been advised.*
Plur.	Mon-iti simus *v.* fuerimus	*We should have been advised*
	Mon-iti sitis *v.* fueritis	*ye should have been advised*
	Mon-iti sint *v.* fuerint	*they should have been advised.*

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, would have been.*

Sing.	Mon-itus essem *vel* fuissem	*I would have been advised*
	Mon-itus esses *v.* fuisses	*thou wouldst have been advised*
	Mon-itus esset *v.* fuisset	*he would have been advised.*
Plur.	Mon-iti essemus *v.* fuissemus	*We would have been advised*
	Mon-iti essetis *v.* fuissetis	*ye would have been advised*
	Mon-iti essent *v.* fuissent	*they would have been advised.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Mon-eri — *to be advised.*

PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mon-itum esse *vel* fuisse — *to have been advised.*

FUTURE TENSE.

Mon-itum iri — *to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT TENSE *wanting.*—For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui mon-eor -ēris, ētur.*

Digitized by Google

PRETERPERFECT TENSE.

Mon-itus *advised* or *being advised.*

FUTURE *in dus.*

Mon-endus *to be advised.*

§ 68.—THIRD CONJUGATION—REGOR.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Am.*

Sing.	Reg-or	*I am ruled*
	Reg-ĕris *vel* reg-ere	*thou art ruled*
	Reg-ĭtur	*he is ruled.*
Plur.	Reg-imur	*We are ruled*
	Reg-imini	*ye are ruled*
	Reg-untur	*they are ruled.*

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE — *Was.*

Sing.	Reg-ēbar	*I was ruled*
	Reg-ebaris *vel* reg-ebare	*thou wast ruled*
	Reg-ebatur	*he was ruled.*
Plur.	Reg-ebamur	*We were ruled*
	Reg-ebamini	*ye were ruled*
	Reg-ebantur	*they were ruled.*

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE — *Have been.*

Sing.	Rec-tus sum *vel* fui	*I have been ruled*
	Rec-tus es *v.* fuisti	*thou hast been ruled*
	Rec-tus est *v.* fuit	*he hath been ruled.*
Plur.	Rec-ti sumus *v.* fuimus	*We have been ruled*
	Rec-ti estis *v.* fuistis	*ye have been ruled*
	Rec-ti sunt, fuerunt *v.* fuere	*they have been ruled.*

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE — *Had been.*

Sing.	Rec-tus eram *vel* fueram	*I had been ruled*
	Rec-tus eras *v.* fueras	*thou hadst been ruled*
	Rec-tus erat *v.* fuerat	*he had been ruled.*
Plur.	Rec-ti eramus *v.* fueramus	*We had been ruled*
	Rec-ti eratis *v.* fueratis	*ye had been ruled*
	Rec-ti erant *v.* fuerant	*they had been ruled.*

Digitized by Google

5. First Future Tense — *Shall* or *will be.*

Sing.	Reg-ar	*I shall* or *will be ruled*
	Reg-ēris *vel* reg-ere	*thou shalt* or *wilt be ruled*
	Reg-etur	*he shall* or *will be ruled.*
Plur.	Reg-emur	*We shall* or *will be ruled*
	Reg-emini	*ye shall* or *will be ruled*
	Reg-entur	*they shall* or *will be ruled.*

6. Second Future Tense — *Shall have been.*

Sing.	Rec-tus ero *vel* fuero	*I shall have been ruled*
	Rec-tus eris *v.* fueris	*thou shalt have been ruled*
	Rec-tus erit *v.* fuerit	*he shall have been ruled.*
Plur.	Rec-ti erimus *v.* fuerimus	*We shall have been ruled*
	Rec-ti eritis *v.* fueritis	*ye shall have been ruled*
	Rec-ti erunt *v.* fuerint	*they shall have been ruled.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense — *No first Person.*

Sing.	Reg-ĕre reg-ĭtor	*Be thou ruled*
	Reg-atur, reg-itor	*let him be ruled.*
Plur.	Reg-amur	*Let us be ruled*
	Reg-imini, reg-iminor	*be ye ruled*
	Reg-antur, reg-untor	*let them be ruled.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense — *May, can, would, should be.*

Sing.	Reg-ar	*I may* or *can be ruled*
	Reg-āris *vel* reg-are	*thou mayst* or *canst be ruled*
	Reg-atur	*he may* or *can be ruled.*
Plur.	Reg-amur	*We may* or *can be ruled*
	Reg-amini	*ye may* or *can be ruled*
	Reg-antur	*they may* or *can be ruled.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense — *Might, could, should be.*

Sing.	Reg-ĕrer	*I might* or *could be ruled*
	Reg-erēris *vel* reg-erere	*thou mightst* or *couldst be ruled*
	Reg-eretur	*he might* or *could be ruled.*
Plur.	Reg-eremur	*We might* or *could be ruled*
	Reg-eremini	*ye might* or *could be ruled*
	Reg-erentur	*they might* or *could be ruled.*

3. Preterperfect Tense — *May, should have been.*

Sing.	Rec-tus sim *vel* fuerim	*I should have been ruled*
	Rec-tus sis *v.* fueris	*thou shouldst have been ruled*
	Rec-tus sit *v.* fuerit	*he should have been ruled.*
Plur.	Rec-ti simus *v.* fuerimus	*We should have been ruled*
	Rec-ti sitis *v.* fueritis	*ye should have been ruled*
	Rec-ti sint *v.* fuerint	*they should have been ruled.*

Digitized by Google

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE — *Might, could, would have been.*

Sing.	Rec-tus essem *vel* fuissem	*I would have been ruled*
	Rec-tus esses *v.* fuisses	*thou wouldst have been ruled*
	Rec-tus esset *v.* fuisset	*he would have been ruled.*
Plur.	Rec-ti essemus *v.* fuissemus	*We would have been ruled*
	Rec-ti essetis *v.* fuissetis	*ye would have been ruled*
	Rec-ti essent *v.* fuissent	*they would have been ruled.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Reg-i — *to be ruled.*

PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tum esse *vel* fuisse — *to have been ruled.*

FUTURE TENSE.

Rec-tum iri — *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT TENSE *wanting.* — For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui reg-or*; *-ĕris*, *-ĭtur*, &c.

PRETERPERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tus — *ruled or being ruled.*

FUTURE *in dus.*

Reg-endus — *to be ruled.*

---

§ 69.—FOURTH CONJUGATION—AUDIOR.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Am.*

Sing.	Aud-ior	*I am heard*
	Aud-īris *vel* aud-ire	*thou art heard*
	Aud-itur	*he is heard.*
Plur.	Aud-imur	*We are heard*
	Aud-imini	*ye are heard*
	Aud-iuntur	*they are heard.*

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE— *Was.*

Sing.	Aud-iēbar	*I was heard*
	Aud-iebaris *vel* aud-iebare	*thou wast heard*
	Aud-iebatur	*he was heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iebamur	*We were heard*
	Aud-iebamini	*ye were heard*
	Aud-iebantur	*they were heard.*

Digitized by Google

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE — *Have been.*

Sing.	Aud-itus sum *vel* fui	*I have been heard*
	Aud-itus es *v.* fuisti	*thou hast been heard*
	Aud-itus est *v.* fuit	*he has been heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iti sumus *v.* fuimus	*We have been heard*
	Aud-iti estis *v.* fuistis	*ye have been heard*
	Aud-iti sunt, fuerunt *v.* fuere	*they have been heard.*

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE — *Had been.*

Sing.	Aud-itus eram *vel* fueram	*I had been heard*
	Aud-itus eras *v.* fueras	*thou hadst been heard*
	Aud-itus erat *v.* fuerat	*he had been heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iti eramus *v.* fueramus	*We had been heard*
	Aud-iti eratis *v.* fueratis	*ye had been heard*
	Aud-iti erant *v.* fuerant	*they had been heard.*

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE — *Shall* or *will be.*

Sing.	Aud-iar	*I shall* or *will be heard*
	Aud-iēris *vel* aud-iere	*thou shalt* or *wilt be heard*
	Aud-ietur	*he shall* or *will be heard.*
Plur	Aud-iemur	*We shall* or *will be heard*
	Aud-iemini	*ye shall* or *will be heard*
	Aud-ientur	*they shall* or *will be heard.*

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE — *Shall have been.*

Sing.	Aud-itus ero *vel* fuero	*I shall have been heard*
	Aud-itus eris *v.* fueris	*thou shalt have been heard*
	Aud-itus erit *v.* fuerit	*he shall have been heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iti erimus *v.* fuerimus	*We shall have been heard*
	Aud-iti eritis *v.* fueritis	*ye shall have been heard*
	Aud-iti erunt *v.* fuerint	*they shall have been heard.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.—*No first Person.*

Sing.	Aud-ire, aud-itor	*Be thou heard*
	Aud-iatur, aud-itor	*let him be heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iamur	*Let us be heard*
	Aud-imini, aud-iminor	*be ye heard*
	Aud-iantur, aud-iuntor	*let them be heard.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE — *May, can, would, should be.*

Sing.	Aud-iar	*I may* or *can be heard*
	Aud-iāris *vel* aud-iare	*thou mayst* or *canst be heard*
	Aud-iatur	*he may* or *can be heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iamur	*We may* or *can be heard*
	Aud-iamini	*ye may* or *can be heard*
	Aud-iantur	*they may* or *can be heard.*

Digitized by Google

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE — *Might, could, should be.*

Sing.	Aud-irer	*I might* or *could be heard*
	Aud-irēris *vel* aud-irere	*thou mightst* or *couldst be heard*
	Aud-iretur	*he might* or *could be heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iremur	*We might* or *could be heard*
	Aud-iremini	*ye might* or *could be heard*
	Aud-irentur	*they might* or *could be heard.*

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE — *May, should have been.*

Sing.	Aud-itus sim *vel* fuerim	*I should have been heard*
	Aud-itus sis *v.* fueris	*thou shouldst have been heard*
	Aud-itus sit *v.* fuerit	*he should have been heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iti simus *v.* fuerimus	*We should have been heard*
	Aud-iti sitis *v.* fueritis	*ye should have been heard*
	Aud-iti sint *v.* fuerint	*they should have been heard.*

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE — *Would, might, could have been*

Sing.	Aud-itus essem *vel* fuissem	*I would have been heard*
	Aud-itus esses *v.* fuisses	*thou wouldst have been heard*
	Aud-itus esset *v.* fuisset	*he would have been heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iti essemus *v.* fuissemus	*We would have been heard*
	Aud-iti essetis *v.* fuissetis	*ye would have been heard*
	Aud-iti essent *v.* fuissent	*they would have been heard.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-iri — *to be heard.*

PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-itum esse *vel* fuisse — *to have been heard.*

FUTURE TENSE.

Aud-itum iri — *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT *wanting.* — For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui aud-ior*, *-īris -ītur*, &c.

PRETERPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-itus — *heard* or *being heard.*

FUTURE *in dus.*

Aud-iendus — *to be heard.*

Digitized by Google

§ 70.— OBSERVATIONS ON THE TENSES IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

Obs. 1. All Present, Imperfect, and First Future Indicative Tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed from the corresponding ones in the Active by changing *o* into *or*, or *m* into *r*; as *amo, amor; amabam, amabar; amabo, amabor.* So, the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive: *amem, amer; amarem, amarer.* So in *moneo, rego, audio.*

Obs. 2. The Second Person Imperative Passive is always the same as the Infinitive Active: as *amāre, monēre, regĕre, audīre.*

Obs. 3. Neither the Active nor Passive Voice has a Future Subjunctive; but the other tenses of the Subjunctive supply its place:

Examples. — He said he would write, when he should have heard: *promisit se scripturum, quùm audivisset: promitto me scripturum, si hoc a me audiatur.* If no Future has preceded, the Future in *rus*, with the Auxiliary Verb in the Subjunctive, is used for the Active: as, *non dubito quin auditurus sim: non dubitabam quin auditurus essem;* and, in the Passive Voice, *futurum sit ut*, or *fore ut*, followed by the Passive Subjunctive: as, *non dubito quin futurum sit, ut hoc audiatur;* or, *non dubito fore, ut hoc audiatur.*

Obs. 4. In Poetry the Infinitive Passive has sometimes another form besides *i*; viz. in *ier*: as, *amarier*: thus, *Spargĭer agno.* — Hor. *Dicier hic est.* — Pers.

Obs. 5. The Gerund and Future in *dus* of the Third and Fourth Conjugations ended, in old Latin, in *undus*: as *gerundus, audiundus.*

Obs. 6. The Futures in *dus* make, with the Verb *sum*, a Conjugation of their own, which expresses *necessity* or *fitness*: as follows,

	Indicative.		Subjunctive.		
Amandus	sum	*I am*			
	eram	*I was*	sim	*I may be*	*to be loved.*
	fui	*I have been*	essem *v.* forem	*I might be*	
	fueram	*I had been*	fuerim	*I might have been*	
	ero	*I shall be*	fuissem	*I should have been*	
	fuero	*I shall have been.*			

Infin. — Amandum esse, fuisse, fore.

This is called the *Periphrastic Conjugation.* (See § 64.)

Digitized by Google

Obs. 7. *No* Verbs, *except* Deponents and Neuter Passives, have a Participle of the Perfect in an Active Sense, —

Thus: say not *ventus* having come, but use *quum* with the Pluperfect Subjunctive; thus, *quum venissem.* But you will say *profectus* having set out, because *proficiscor* is a deponent; and you will say *confisus* having trusted, because *fido* is a Neuter Passive.

(See under PARTICIPLES, § 54, *Obs.* 5.)

Obs. 8. Also the Gerund in *dum* (or Gerund of *Necessity*) makes a *Periphrastic Conjugation* with *sum:* as,

Amandum	mihi tibi illi nobis vobis illis	est	*I* *you* *he* *We* *ye* *they*	*must love.*

So, *amandum erat, erit, fuit, fuerat, fuerit,* &c., for the other Tenses.

Obs. 9. Examples of GERUNDS, and of the PARTICIPLES in *dus*, the latter used as Adjectives: —

Quæ finis *standi?* — nos *flendo* ducimus horas.
Nate Deâ, *superanda* omnis fortuna *ferendo est.*
Sublimes animas ad cœlum hinc ire *putandum* est.

Parcendum teneris: et dum se lætus ad auras
Palmes agit, laxis per purum immissus habenis,
Ipsa acie nondum falcis *tentanda,* sed uncis
Carpendæ manibus frondes, interque *legendæ.*
Texendæ sepes etiam et pecus omne *tenendum.*

Sollicitanda tamen tellus pulvisque *movendus,*
Et jam maturis *metuendus* Jupiter uvis. — *Virg*

Obs. 10. Example of the SUPINE in *um:* —

Missi sunt *speculatum* arcem.

This may be also put thus: —

Missi sunt { ad speculandum arcem
ad arcem speculandam,
speculandæ arcis causâ,
speculaturi, *or* qui specularentur, *or* ut specularentur arcem.

Digitized by Google

§ 71.—DEPONENT VERBS.*

DEPONENTS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Abŏmĭnor I abhor.
Adversor oppose.
Adūlor flatter.
Æmŭlor rival.
Allūcinor dote, talk idly.
**Altercor* quarrel.
Amplexor embrace.
Ancillor am a handmaid.
Aprīcor sun myself.
Aquor fetch water, *frumentor* collect corn, *lignor* collect wood, *materior* fell timber, *pabulor* forage.
Arbitror think.
Architector build.
Argūmentor prove.
Argūtor chatter.
Aspernor despise.
Assentor agree, flatter.
Adstipŭlor support.
Auctiōnor sell at auction.
Aucŭpor catch birds.
Averſor dislike.
Augŭror, **Auspĭcor*, *Hăriŏlor*, *Vaticĭnor* } practise soothsaying.
Auxilior aid.
Bacchor revel as a Bacchanal.
**Cachinnor* laugh aloud.
Călumnior cavil.
Cavillor ridicule.
Caupōnor deal by retail.
Causor allege.
Cōmissor revel.
Cŏmĭtor accompany (Active only in the poets).
Commentor reflect upon, dispute.
Conciōnor harangue.
Conflictor contend.
Cōnor attempt.
Consilior advise.
Consōlor comfort.
Conspĭcor behold.
Contemplor contemplate.
Convīcior revile.
Convīvor feast.
Cornīcor chatter as a crow.
Crimĭnor accuse.
Cunctor delay.
Deversor lodge.
Depecūlor plunder.
Despĭcor despise; ***despĭcatus*** is Passive, despised.
Dimĭcor fight.
Dignor think worthy.
Dedignor disdain.
Dŏmĭnor rule.
Elucubror produce by dint of labour.
Epŭlor feast.
Exsecror execrate.
**Fabrĭcor* fashion.
Fabŭlor, *confabulor*, talk.

* *Obs.* These words are used also in the Active, but less frequently.

Digitized by Google

Fœnĕror lend at interest (in later writers Active).
Fērior keep holiday.
Frustror disappoint.
Fūror, suffūror, steal.
Glōrior boast.
Græcor live luxuriously.
Grassor advance, attack.
Gratificor comply with.
Grātor, grātŭlor, give thanks, present congratulations.
Grăvor think heavy.
Helluor gluttonize.
Hortor exhort.
Hospĭtor am a guest, lodge.
Jacŭlor throw, dart.
Imaginor imagine.
Imĭtor imitate.
Indignor am indignant, spurn.
Infĭtior deny.
Insidior plot.
Interprĕtor explain.
Jŏcor jest.
Lætor rejoice.
Lamentor lament.
Latrōcinor rob.
Lenōcinor (*alicui*) flatter.
Libidĭnor am voluptuous.
Licĭtor bid at an auction.
Lucror gain.
Luctor strive, wrestle.
* *Ludificor* ridicule.
Machinor devise.
Medĭcor heal.
Meditor meditate.
Mercor buy.
* *Mĕridior* repose at noon.
Mētor measure out.
Mĭnor, mĭnĭtor threaten.
Mīror wonder.
Mĭsĕror, commiseror, pity.
Mŏdĕror restrain, temper.
Mŏdŭlor modulate.
Mōrigeror comply.
Mŏror delay.
* *Mŭnĕror, remuneror*, reward.
Mūtuor borrow.
Nĕgōtior carry on business.
Nidŭlor build a nest.
Nundĭnor deal in buying and selling.
Nūgor trifle.
Nutrīcor nourish.
Obversor to be present to sight or thought.
Odōror smell out.
Ominor prophesy.
Opĕror bestow labour on.
Opīnor think.
Opitŭlor lend help.
Oscŭlor kiss.
* *Oscĭtor* yawn.
Otior have leisure.
Pālor wander.
Palpor stroke, flatter.
Parasītor act the flatterer.
Patrocinor patronize.
Percontor inquire.
Peregrīnor dwell as a stranger.
Periclĭtor try, am in danger.
Philŏsŏphor philosophize.
* *Pignĕror* take a pledge, bind by a pledge.
Pigror am idle.
Piscor fish.
* *Popŭlor* lay waste.
Prædor plunder.
Præstōlor wait for.
Prævāricor walk with crooked legs (*figur.* act dishonestly in litigation).

Digitized by Google

Prĕcor pray.
Prælior fight a battle.
Ratiōcĭnor reason.
Recordor remember.
Refrāgor oppose.
Rīmor examine minutely.
Rixor wrangle.
Rustĭcor live in the country.
Scītor, sciscītor, inquire.
Scrūtor, perscrūtor, search.
Sector follow.
Sermōcĭnor hold discourse.
Sōlor, consōlor comfort.
Spātior, exspatior, walk.
Spĕcŭlor keep a good look out.
Stĭpŭlor make a bargain.
Stomăchor am indignant.
Suāvior kiss.
Suffrāgor assent to.
Suspĭcor suspect.
Tergĭversor shuffle.
Testor, testificor, bear witness.
Tricor make unreasonable difficulties (*tricas*).
Tristor sad.
Tŭmultuor make uproar.
Tūtor defend.
Văd̆or summon to trial.
Văgor wander.
Vēlĭtor skirmish with light troops.
Vĕneror venerate.
Vēnor hunt.
Verĕcundor feel shame at doing.
Versor (properly Passive of *verso*) dwell, am occupied in.
Vōcĭfĕror vociferate.

DEPONENTS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Fătĕor, fassus sum, fatēri, acknowledge. *Confiteor, confessus sum,* confess; so *profiteor, diffiteor.*
Lĭceor, licĭtus sum, bid at an auction. *Polliceor* promise.
Mĕdeor heal.
Mĕreor, meritus sum, more commonly *merui,* deserve. *Meritus* has usually a passive sense. *Commereor, demereor, promereor.*
Misereor, miseritus or *misertus sum,* pity.
Reor, rătus sum, rēri, think (no subjunctive mood).
Tueor, tŭĭtus sum, look upon (defend). *Contueor, intueor,* look upon.
Vereor, verĭtus sum, fear. *Revereor, subvereor.*

DEPONENTS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

From the obsolete *Apiscor, aptus sum, apisci,* are derived *Adipiscor adeptus sum,* and *indipiscor,* obtain.
Expergiscor, experrectus sum, expergisci, awake.

Digitized by Google

Fruor, fructus (or *fruĭtus*) *sum, frui,* enjoy. *Perfruor, perfructus sum.*

Fungor, functus sum, fungi, perform. *Defungor.*

Grădior, Aggredior, aggressus sum, aggrĕdi; so *congredior, digredior,* &c.

Invĕhor, invectus sum, invĕhi, inveigh against, (properly Passive of *veho*).

Irascor, irasci, (properly an inchoative,) grow angry; *iratus sum* I *am* angry. I *have been* or *was* angry, is *succensui.*

Lābor, lapsus sum, lābi, fall. *Collābor* sink together; *dilābor* fall in pieces.

Lŏquor, loquutus (or *locutus*) *sum, loqui,* speak. So *allŏquor* address; *colloquor* speak with; *eloquor,* &c.

From the obsolete *miniscor, Comminiscor, commentus sum, comminisci,* devise, imagine. *Reminiscor* has no perfect; *recordatus sum* is used for the perfect.

Mŏrior, morĕris, imperative *morĕre: morerer, moriebar, moriar, mortuus sum,* (participle future *moriturus,*) *mori,* to die, (*moriri* poetical). *Emorior, commorior, demorior.*

Nanciscor, nactus sum, nancisci, obtain.

Nascor, natus sum, nasci, nasciturus, am born. *Innascor, renascor.*

Nītor, nisus or *nixus sum, niti,* lean upon, strive. So *adnītor, connitor, renitor,* and *enitor,* exert myself; in the sense of 'bring forth' the participle *enixa* is preferable; *obnitor* has most commonly *obnixus.*

Oblīviscor, oblītus sum, oblivisci, forget.

Orior, ortus sum, (part. fut. *oriturus,*) has in the infinitive *oriri,* and imperf. subj. *orīrer,* according to the Fourth Conjugation; the present follows the Third, *orĕris* or *orīris, orĭtur, orĭmur. Coorior* and *exorior* are formed in the same way: of *adorior, adorīris* and *adorītur* are more in use than *adorĕris, adorĭtur.*

Păciscor, pactus rum, (or *pepigi,* see *pango,*) make a bargain. *Depaciscor, depactus sum;* or *depeciscor,* (*depectus* not used).

Pascor, pastus sum, feed; intransitive. (Properly Passive of *pasco.*)

Pătior, passus sum, păti, suffer. *Perpetior perpessus sum, perpĕti,* endure.

From *plecto* twine, are derived, *Amplector* and *complector, complexus sum,* embrace.

Prŏficiscor, profectus sum, proficisci, travel.

Quĕror, questus sum, quĕri, complain. *Conquĕror.*

Ringor, (no perfect or participle,) *ringi,* grin, shew the teeth.

Sĕquor, sequutus (or *secutus*) *sum, sĕqui,* follow. *Assĕquor, consequor,* &c.

Vescor, (no perf. or sup.) *vesci,* eat. *Edi* is used as the perfect.

Ulciscor, ultus sum, ulcisci, revenge, punish.

Digitized by Google

Utor, ūsus sum, uti, use. *Abūtor,* abuse.

Divertor, prævertor, and *revertor.* They take the perfect from the Active form; *reversus sum* is not so common as *reverti.*

DEPONENTS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Adsentior, adsensus sum, adsentiri, assent. The Active *adsentio, adsensi, adsensum, adsentire,* is not so common.

Blandior, blanditus sum, blandiri, flatter.

Experior, expertus sum, experiri, experience, try.

Largior, largītus sum, largiri, give money. *Dilargior.*

Mentior, mentitus sum, mentiri, lie. *Ementior.*

Metior, mensus sum, metiri, measure. *Dimetior, emetior, permetior.*

Mōlior, molītus sum, moliri, move a mass, plan. *Amolior, demolior,* &c.

Opperior, oppertus sum, opperiri, wait for.

Ordior, orsus sum, ordiri, begin. *Exordior, redordior.*

Orior, ortus sum, oriri, arise.

Partior, partitus sum, partīri, divide. *Dispertior, dispertitus sum* (more frequently Active); *impertior* (also *impertio, impartio, impartior*).

Potior, potītus sum, potīri, possess myself of. The present indic. and the imperf. subj. are sometimes formed after the Third Conjugation; *potītur, potīmur; potĕretur, poteremur.*

Sortior, sortītus sum, sortiri, cast lots.

§ 72. — IRREGULAR VERBS DECLINED.

CERTAIN Verbs vary from the general rule, and are formed in the manner following:—

1. Possum, pŏtĕs, potui, posse; potens: *to be able.*

2. Vŏlo, vīs, volui, velle; volendi, volendo, volendum; volens: *to be willing.*

3. Nōlo, nonvis, nolui, nolle; nolendi, nolendo, nolendum; nolens: *to be unwilling.*

Digitized by Google

4. Mālo, mavīs, malui, malle; malendi, malendo, malendum; malens: *to be more willing* or *to have rather.*

5. Edo, ĕdis *vel* ēs, edi, ederе *vel* esse; edendi, edendo, edendum; esum, esu; edens, esūrus: *to eat.*

6. Fĕro, fers, tŭli, ferre; ferendi, ferendo, ferendum; lātum, latu; ferens, laturus: *to bear* or *suffer.*

7. Fio, fis, factus sum *vel* fui, fĭĕri; factus, faciendus: *to be made* or *done.*

8. Fĕror, ferris *vel* ferre, latus sum *vel* fui, ferri; latus, ferendus: *to be borne* or *suffered.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense — *I am able, &c.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*	
Possum	potes	potest	possŭmus	potestis	possunt.
Volo	vis	vult	volŭmus	vultis	volunt.
Nolo	nonvis	nonvult	nolŭmus	nonvultis	nolunt.
Malo	mavis	mavult	malŭmus	mavultis	malunt.
Edo	edis *vel* es	edit *v.* est	edĭmus	editis *v.* estis	edunt.
Fero	fers	fert	ferĭmus	fertis	ferunt.
Fio	fis	fit	fimus	fitis	fiunt.
Feror	ferris *v.* ferre	fertur	ferĭmur	ferimini	feruntur.

2. Preterimperfect Tense — *I was able, &c.*

Pot-ĕram	-eras	-erat	-erāmus	-eratis	-erant.
Vol-ēbam, Nol-ēbam, Mal-ēbam, Ed-ēbam, Fer-ēbam, Fi-ēbam	-ebas	-ebat	-ebāmus	-ebatis	-ebant.
Fer-ēbar,	-ebaris *v.* -ebare,	-ebatur	-ebāmur	-ebamini	-ebantur

3. Preterperfect Tense — *I have been able, &c.*

Potu-i, Volu-i, Nolu-i, Malu-i, Ed-i, Tul-i		-isti	-it	-ĭmus	-istis	-ērunt *vel* -ēre
Fact-us, Lat-us	sum *vel* fui	es *vel* fuisti	est *vel* fuit	-i sumus *vel* fuĭmus	estis *vel* fuistis	sunt, fuērunt *vel* fuēre.

Digitized by Google

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE — *I had been able, &c.*

Singular.				*Plural.*		
Potu-ĕram, Volu-ĕram, Nolu-ĕram, Malu-ĕram, Ed-ĕram, Tul-ĕram		-eras	-erat	-crāmus	-eratis	-erant.
Fact-us	eram	eras	erat	-i erāmus	eratis	erant
	vel	*vel*	*vel*	*vel*	*vel*	*vel*
Lat-us	fuĕram	fueras	fuerat	fuerāmus	fueratis	fuerant.

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE — *I shall* or *will be able, &c.*

Pot-ĕro	-eris		-erit	-erĭmus	-erĭtis	-erunt.
*Vol-am, *Nol-am, *Mal-am, Ed-am, Fer-am, Fi-am	-es		-et	-ēmus	-etis	-ent.
Fer-ar	-ēris *v.* -ēre		-etur	-ēmur	-emini	-entur.

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE — *I shall have been able, &c.*

Potu-ĕro, Volu-ĕro, Nolu-ĕro, Malu-ĕro, Ed-ĕro, Tul-ĕro		-eris	-erit	-erimus	-eritis	-erint.
Fact-us	ero	eris	erit	-i erimus	eritis	erunt
	vel	*vel*	*vel*	*vel*	*vel*	*vel*
Lat-us	fuĕro	fueris	fuerit	fuerimus	fueritis	fuerint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Obs. *Possum, volo, malo,* have no Imperative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE — *Be thou unwilling, &c.*

Singular	*Plural.*
Noli, nolīto	nolīte, nolitōte.
Ede, edĭto, *vel* es, esto; edat, edito, *vel* este, esto	edāmus; edĭte, edĭtōte, *vel* este, estote; edant, edunto.
Fer, ferto; ferat, ferto,	ferāmus; ferte, fertote; fer-ant, -unto.
Fi, fito; fiat, fito,	fiāmus; fite, fitote; fiant, fiunto
Fer-re, fer-tor; fer-ātur, fer-tor,	fer-āmur; fer-imini, fer-iminor; fer-[-antur, fer-untor

* Volam, nolam, malam are very rare.

Digitized by Google

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense—*I may be able, &c.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
Poss-im Vel-im Nol-im Mal-im	-is		-it	-īmus	-itis	-int.
Ed-am Fer-am Fi-am	-as		-at	-āmus	-atis	-ant.
Fer-ar	-āris *vel* -āre		-ātur	-āmur	-amini	-antur.

2. Preterimperfect Tense—*I might be able, &c.*

Poss-em Vell-em Noll-em Mall-em Edĕr-em *vel* Ess-em Ferr-em Fĭĕr-em	-es		-et	ēmus	-etis	-ent.
Ferr-er	-ēris *vel* ēre		-etur	ēmur	-emini	-entur

3. Preterperfect Tense—*I should have been able, &c.*

Potu-ĕrim Volu-ĕrim Nolu-ĕrim Malu-ĕrim Ed-ĕrim Tul-ĕrim	-eris		-erit	-erimus	-eritis	-erint.
Fact-us Lat-us	sim *vel* fuĕrim	sis *vel* fueris	sit *vel* fuerit	-i simus *vel* fuerimus	sitis *vel* fueritis	sint *vel* fuerint.

4. Preterpluperfect Tense—*I would have been able, &c.*

Potu-issem Volu-issem Nolu-issem Malu-issem Ed-issem Tul-issem	-isses		-isset	-issēmus	-issetis	-issent.
Fact-us Lat-us	essem *vel* fuissem	esses *vel* fuisses	esset *vel* fuisset	-i essēmus *vel* fuissēmus	essetis *vel* fuissetis	essent *vel* fuissent.

Digitized by Google

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE — *To be able, &c.*

Posse.	Nolle.	Edĕre *vel* esse.	Fiĕri.
Velle.	Malle.	Ferre.	Ferri.

PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE — *To have been able, &c.*

Potuisse	Noluisse.	Edisse.	Fac-tum esse *vel* fuisse.
Voluisse.	Maluisse.	Tulisse.	La-tum esse *vel* fuisse.

FUTURE TENSE — *To be about to eat, &c.*

Esūrum esse.	Factum iri.
Latūrum esse.	Latum iri.

Obs. ***Possum, volo, nolo, malo,*** have no Future Tense of the Infinitive Mood.

---

§ 73. — OBSERVATIONS ON IRREGULAR VERBS.

Obs. 1. ***Possum*** is from *pŏtis-sum, pŏtĕ-sum,* I am able. ***Nōlo*** is from *non volo; mālo* is from *magis-volo,* or *măgĕ-vŏlo.*

Obs. 2. The *r* is doubled only in those tenses of *Fero* where *e* has been thrown out: thus, instead of *ferĕrem,* (like *regerem*), is used *ferrem;* so for the Infinitive Active, *ferere,* is used *ferre;* so for the Second Person Indicative Passive, *fereris,* is used *ferris.*

Obs. 3. *Tuli* is for *tĕtŭli,* from the old word, *tulo,* a form of *tollo* connected with τλάω, τλητὸν, whence *lātum.*

Obs. 4. With *Fio* cp. φύω, Gr. Gr. § 94.

EO *to go,* is also a verb irregular.

Eo, īs, ivi, ire, ĭtum, iens, itūrus.

INDIC. MOOD. *Pres. T.* } *Sing.* Eo, īs, it. *Plur.* Imus, ītis, eunt.

Preterimperf. Tense. } *Sing.* Ibam, ibas, ibat. *Plur.* Ibāmus, ibatis, [ibant.

Future Tense. *Sing.* Ibo, ibis, ibit. *Plur.* Ibĭmus, ibitis, ibunt.

IMPERAT. M. *Sing.* I, ito; eat, ito. *Plur.* Eāmus; ite, itōte; [eant, eunto.

SUBJUNCT. M. *Sing.* Eam, eas, eat. *Plur.* Eāmus, eatis, eant.

GERUNDS. Eundi, eundo, eundum.

PARTICIPLE *Pres. Tense.* Iens; *Gen.* eūntis.

In all other Moods and Tenses *Eo* is declined like *audio.*

(Cp. εἶμι, ibo, Gr. Gr. § 80.)

Digitized by Google

§ 74.— *Obs.* 1. In like manner the compounds of *Eo* are declined; so *queo* to be able, and *nequeo* to be unable; except that these two last have no Imperative Mood nor Gerunds.

Obs. 2. The compounds of *Eo* rarely take *ivi*, but *ii*, in the Perfect and Tenses formed from it: as, *redeo*, I turn, makes *redii*, *rediissem*, not *redivi*. So *abeo*, *abii*, and the rest: as, *abeo*, *intereo*, *pereo*, *vĕneo* I am sold, from *vĕnum eo*.

§ 75.—DEFECTIVE VERBS.

VERBS are called *Defective* that have only some particular Tenses and Persons: as,

AIO *I say ay*, or *I affirm.*

INDIC. MOOD, *Pres. Tense*, *Sing.* Aio, ăis, ait. *Plur.* Aiunt.
Preterimp. T. *Sing.* Aiē-bam, -bas, -bat.
Plur. Aie-bāmus, -batis, -bant.
Preterperf. T. *Sing.* Aisti. *Plur.* Aistis.
SUBJUNCT. M., *Present T.* *Sing.* Aias, aiat. *Plur.* Aiant.

Obs. 1. *Ain'*, for *Aisne*.
Obs. 2. See below, INQUAM.

ĂVĒ *or* HAVĒ *Hail!*

IMPERATIVE MOOD, *Sing.* Ave, avēto. *Pl.* Avēte, avetōte.
INFINITIVE MOOD, Avēre.

AUSIM *I may dare.*

INDIC. or POTENT. MOOD, *Sing.* Ausim, ausis, ausit.
Plur. Ausint.

Obs. *Ausim* is an old Perfect Subjunctive, from *audeo*. (Compare *faxim*.)

CĔDŎ *Give me.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD, *Sing.* Cedo. *Plur.* Cedĭte, Cette.

CŒPI *I begin.* (*Co-apio*, *coepi*.) (See NOVI.)

INDIC. M., *Preterperf. Tense*, *Sing.* Cœpi, cœpisti.
PARTICIP., *Fut. in rus*, Cœpturus. *Participp. Pass.* Cœptus.

Obs. With an Infinitive Passive, *cœpi* is not used, but *cœptus sum*: as, *Urbs obsideri cœpta est.* So, *desitus sum*, not *desii*.

Digitized by Google

FAXO *or* FAXIM *I will* or *may do it.*

INDIC. or POT. M., *Fut. T.* *Sing.* Faxo *vel* faxim, faxis, faxit.
Plur. Faximus, faxitis, faxint.

Obs. *Faxo* is an old Second Future for *fecero.* *Faxim* is an old Perfect Subjunctive for *fecerim.*

INQUAM (*ἐνέπω*) *Say I.*

INDIC. M.,	*Present Tense,*	*Sing.* In-quam, in-quis, inquit.
		Plur. In-quĭmus, -quĭtis, -quiunt.
	Preterimp. T.	*Sing.* In-quiē-bam, -bas, -bat.
		Plur. In-quiē-bamus, -batis, -bant.
	Preterp. Tense,	*Sing.* In-quii, in-quisti.
		Plur. In-quistis.
	Future Tense,	*Sing.* In-quies, in-quiet.
		Plur. In-quient.
IMPERATIVE MOOD,		*Sing.* In-que, in-quĭto.

PARTICIPLE, In-quiens.

Obs. 1. *Inquam* is used to quote what another said, or to repeat what one has said oneself. It never stands the first word in a sentence.

Obs. 2. *Ait* introduces an *oratio obliqua;* but *inquit,* an *oratio recta.* Example: —

Nil *ait* esse prius, melius nil cælibe vitâ.
" Nil satis est," *inquit,* " quia tanti quantum habeas sis."— *Hor.*

Obs. 3. *Ait* is used for both purposes by the Poets.

MEMINI *I remember.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD, *Sing.* Memento. *Plur.* Mementōte.
(*See* NOVI.)

NOVI *I know;* and MEMINI *I remember.* These two verbs have the tenses only that are formed from the Preterperfect Tense of the Indicative Mood: as of

Memin-i are formed *memin-ĕram, -ĕrim, -issem, -ĕro, -isse.*
In like manner *Cœpi* and *Odi* also form these tenses.
Novi contracts its tenses: as, *novisti, nôsti; noveram, nôram.*

ODI *I hate.* (*See* NOVI.)

INDIC. M., *Preterperf. T.* *Sing.* Odi, odisti, odit.
Plur. Odērunt.
Second Future T. Sing. Oder-o, -is, -it, &c.
PARTICIP., *Preterperf. T.* Osus. *Fut. in rus,* Osurus.

Digitized by Google

QUÆSO (*quæro*) *Prithee.*

INDIC. M., *Present Tense.* *Sing.* Quæso, quæsis, quæsit.
Plur. Quæsŭmus.

INFIN. M., Quæsĕre. PARTICIPLE, Quæsens.

SALVE *Hail!*

INDICAT. M., *Future Tense,* *Sing.* Salvēbis.
IMPERATIVE MOOD, *Sing.* Salve, salvēto. *Plur.* Salvētc
INFINITIVE MOOD, Salvēre.

So VALE *Farewell!*

§ 76.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.

VERBS, when expressed in general without any *Person* as Nominative case, and which in English take the word *it* before them, are called *Impersonals:* as,

It delighteth *delectat, delectabat, delectavit, &c.*
It becometh *decet, decebat, decuit, &c.*
It is fought *pugnatur, pugnabatur, pugnatum est, &c.*
It seemeth *videtur, videbatur, videbitur, visum est, &c.*
It happeneth *fit, accidit, evenit, contingit.*

IMPERSONALS are thus declined:

PRESENT, Juvat, *Sing.*	me	*it delights.*	*me*
	te		*thee*
	illum		*him.*
Plur.	nos		*us*
	vos		*you*
	illos		*them.*

IMPERF. Juvabat.
PERFECT, Juvit.

For the Imperative, you will use the Subjunctive: as, Be thou ashamed *Pudeat te.*

Digitized by Google

Obs. Miseret *in the Perfect makes* Misertum est.

Piget	„	„	Piguit *or* Pigĭtum est.
Pudet	„	„	Puduit *or* Pudĭtum est.
Tædet	„	„	Tæduit *or* Pertæsum est.
Decet	„	„	Decuit.
Dedecet	„	„	Dedecuit.
Licet	„	„	Licuit.
Oportet	„	„	Oportuit.
Pœnitet	„	„	Pœnituit.

§ 77.—OF AN ADVERB.

AN ADVERB is a part of speech joined to Verbs (*ad verba*), Adjectives, and Substantives, to qualify their signification; and answers the questions *how? where? when?* as, *How* does he speak? He speaks *well. Where* is he? *Here. When* does he come? *To-morrow.*

AN ADVERB is to a Verb what an Adjective is to a Substantive.

§ 78. ADVERBS are

1. MODI *of manner.*
2. LOCI *of place.*
3. TEMPORIS *of time.*
4. QUANTITATIS *of quantity.*

§ 79.—ADVERBIA MODI, *see below,* § 119.

Digitized by Google

§ 80. — Adverbia LOCI, Adverbs of PLACE. — (Cp. Gr. Gr. § 38, Obs. 2; and § 113.)

Where?	*whence?*	*whither?*	*by what way?*	*in what direction?*	*how far?*
Ubi?	unde?	quo?	quâ?	quorsum?	quâtĕnus
Here,	*hence,*	*hither,*	*by this way,*		*thus far,*
Hic;	hinc;	huc;	hāc;		hāctenus.
There,	*thence,*	*thither,*	*by that way,*		*so far,*
Ibi;	inde, exin, exinde;	eo;	eā;		eātenus.
Where you are,	*from your place,*	*to your place,*	*by your way,*		
Isthic;	isthinc;	isthuc;	isthac.		
Where is he,	*from that place,*	*to that place,*	*by his way,*	*in that direction,*	
Illic;	illinc;	illuc;	illac;	illorsum.	
In the same place,	*from the same place,*	*to the same place,*	*by the same way,*		
Ibĭdem;	indĭdem;	eodem;	eādem.		
In both places,	*from both sides,*				
Utrobĭque;	utrinque.				
Every where,	*from all sides,*				
Ubique;	undĭque.				
Some where,	*from some place or other,*	*to some place,*	*by some way,*		*to some point,*
Alicubi;	alicunde;	aliquo;	aliquā;		aliquātenus *
Where you please,	*whence you please,*	*to any place you like,*	*by any way you like,*		
Ubivis, ubilĭbet;	undĕvis, undelibet;	quovis, quolĭbet;	quāvis, quālibet.		
Any where,		*to any place,*			
Uspiam, usquam;		quopiam, quoquam.			
Elsewhere,	*from another place,*	*to another place,*	*by another way,*	*in some other direction,*	
Alibi;	aliunde;	alio;	aliā;	aliorsum.	
Wherever,	*from what place soever,*	*whithersoever,*	*by whatsoever way,*	*in whatsoever direction,*	
Ubicunque;	undecunque, undeunde;	quocunque, quoquo;	quācunque, quāquā;	quoquoversus †.	
No where,					
Nusquam.					

* Add to these — *To a certain point,* quādamtenus. *Example:* Est *quĭddam* prodire tenus, si non datur ultrà. — *Hor.*

† Add to these — *To the right,* dextrorsum (dextro-versum). *To the left,* sinistrorsum. *Inwards,* introrsum. *Within,* intus. *Backwards,* retrorsum. *Upwards,* sursum. *Downwards,* deorsum. *Under,* subtus. Add also, eminus, cominus, foras, cœlĭtus, fundĭtus, pĕnĭtus, antiquitus, humanitus, extrinsĕcus, intrinsecus.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1. *Ubique* is used after *omnis qui, quotquot, quicquid*; in other cases *usquequāque* is used.

Obs. 2. In these Adverbs *tenus* always takes the Ablative Case and Feminine Gender: as, *hāc-tenus.*

§ 81.—Adverbia TEMPORIS, Adverbs of TIME.

(Cp. Gr. Gr. § 114.)

I. When? quando?

Now nunc (*νῦν*).
To-day hŏdiē (hoc die).
Then tunc, tum (*τὸν—i. e. τότε χρόνον*)
Yesterday hĕrī (*χθές*).
Before ante, anteā.
After post, posteā, exin, exinde.
At that time, long before or *after*, ollim (ollus, ille), *definite*; quondam (quùm-dam) *indefinite.*
Long since dūdum, prīdem.
Lately nūper (*νέον-περ*).
The day before prīdie.
The day before yesterday nūdius tertius (nunc dies tertius).
In the morning manĕ.
By day interdiū (inter die).
In the evening vesperi (*ἑσπέρας*).
By night noctu (*νυκτός*).
To-morrow cras.
The day after postrīdie.
The day after to-morrow perendĭe (peremptâ die).
Next day, soon, propĕdiem.
Very soon jamjam, mox, stătim, protĭnus, illĭco (in lŏco), cĭto, confestim, actūtum (ad tuitum).
Not yet nondum.
At some time aliquando, interdum, nonnunquam.
In the mean time intereā, intĕrim.
Always semper, nunquam non.
At length tandem, denĭque, alĭquando.
Never nunquam.

II. How often? quŏties? (*ποσάκις*;)

Every day quotīdie.
Every year quotannis.

Digitized by Google

Often sæpe, crebro, sæpĕnumero.
Pretty often aliquoties.
So often toties.
From time to time identĭdem, subinde.
Sometimes interdum, aliquando.
Generally plerumque.
Again and again etiam atque etiam, itĕrum iterumque.
Seldom raro.

III. How LONG? quamdiu? *To what time?* quousque?
So long tantisper.
Some (*long*) *time* aliquandiu, aliquantisper.
A little time parumper, paulisper.

IV. OF THINGS IN PROGRESS.
One after another in succession deinceps.
Day after day indies.

§ 82.—ADVERBIA QUANTITATIS, ADVERBS OF QUANTITY.

How MUCH? quantum? *Much* multum, ita, valde, magnopere, summopere, admŏdum.
So much tantum.
Too much nimis, nimium.
Little paulum, paullŭlum.
Too little părum.
Enough satis, abunde, affătim.
At least certe, saltem.
Only dumtaxat, tantum, modo.
More plus, magis.

Obs. 1. *Plus* means more in *quantity*; *magis* more in *quality*. *Plus* answers the question *how much?* *magis* answers the question *how?* *Plus* is *more*; *magis* is *rather*: as, *Plus* valet, qui *magis* arte agit quàm vi, quàm qui vi agit *magis* quàm arte.

Obs. 2. Adverbs of equality, resemblance, and the contrary, are—*like, for example,* velut, ut, sicut; *just as if* perinde ac si, æque ac si, non aliter ac si, non secus ac si.

Obs. 3. In these phrases *ac* is generally used when the difference or resemblance of *two different* objects is to be expressed; *quam* when different degrees of *the same* object.

For ADVERBS of ORDER or RANK, see above, under NUMERALS, § 29.

Digitized by Google

§ 83. — Adverbs — INTERROGATIVE, AFFIRMATIVE, NEGATIVE.

INTERROGATIVE, which ask questions, are DIRECT or INDIRECT.

Direct — *An, ne?* in a dubitative sense.

Cur (for *cui rei*), *quare* (for *quā rē?*) why? *quomŏdo* how? *ut* how?

Quin (*quid ne*) why not?

Num (*μὼν*) *numne?* expecting answer No.

Non, nonne? expecting answer Yes.

Obs. Hence *hiccine* (*hicce-ne*) is always interrogative.

Examples.

An? Auditis? *An* me ludit amabilis
Insania? — *Hor.*

Ne? Novistine locum potiorem rure beato? — *Hor.*

Nonne? —— *Nonne* vides, croceos ut Tmolus odores,
India mittit ebur, molles sua thura Sabæi? — *Virg.*

Num? ———— Coeto *num* adest honor idem? — *Hor.*
——*Num* Sigeïs occumbere campis,
Num capti potuere capi? *num* incensa cremavit
Troja viros? — *Virg.*

Quin? *Quin* potius pacem æternam pactosque hymeneos
Exercemus? — *Virg.*

Ut? *Ut* valet? *ut* meminit nostri? — *Hor.*

An—anne? *An* mare quod suprà, memorem, quodque alluit infrà?
Anne lacus tantos? — *Virg.*

Ne—an? Furorne cœcus, *an* rapit vis acrior? — *Hor.*
Pacemne huc fertis? *an* arma? — *Virg.*

Indirect:

An? Romulum post hoc priùs, *an* quietum
Pompilî regnum memorem, *an* superbos
Tarquinî fasces, dubito, *an* Catonis
Nobile lethum. — *Hor.*
Ambigitur quid enim? Castor sciat, *an* Docilis plus. — *Hor.*

Ne—an? Intererit multum Davusne loquatur, *an* heros,
Maturusne senex, *an* adhuc florente juventâ
Fervidus; et, matrona potens, *an* sedula nutrix. — *Hor.*

Utrum—an? Ipse, quis sit, *utrum* sit, *an* non sit, id quoque nescit. — *Catull.*

An non? Quid rĕfert, dictis ignoscat Mutius, *an non?* — *Juv.*

Digitized by Google

AFFIRMATIVE, in reply: *etiam, sane, ita vero, utïque, imo vero.*

By means of two negatives: *non possum non, non possum quin, nemo non.*

NEGATIVE, in reply: *non vero, minimè gentium, nihil minus, nego ita esse.*

Obs. Haud scio an, means *perhaps:* as, *fors-an, forsit-an.*

Ne quidem NOT EVEN (οὐδὲ); the emphatic word stands **between** them: as,

Ne nocturna *quidem* carpentes pensa puellæ
Nescivere hyemem. — *Virg.*
Amicum lædere *ne* joco *quidem* licet. — *Sen.*
Ne Hercules *quidem* contra duos.

NOT — denying a *fact* or *supposition* — *No:* as, You say that I know; or you ask me whether I know; but the fact is, I do *not* know, *Non scio.*

NOT — *Do not,* in *prohibitions* — *Nē:* as *Ne facias hoc,* Do not do this.

Obs. Say, *ne quis* for *ut nemo,* and *ne quid* for *ut nihil.*

NOT — by no means — *Haud* (οὐδὲ); especially with other negatives, or extenuations: as, By no means ill, *Haud male* — and particularly with Adverbs, Adjectives, and Impersonals.

Ex. — *Haud* male Telemachus, proles patientis Ulyssei,
Non est aptus equis Ithacæ locus. — *Hor.*
Haud ignara ac *non* incauta futuri. — *Hor.*

BY NO MEANS — *haudquâquam, nequâquam, neutïquam.*

TO NO PURPOSE — *Nēquidquam.*

MUCH LESS — *Nedum* (*ne dicam* not to mention). *Ex.* Vim tribunitiam sustinere non potuerunt, *nedum* his temporibus. — *Cic.*

NOT ONLY NOT, when followed by *but not even,* is expressed by *non modo* or *non solum* without a second *non:* as, Dolere *non modo* summum, sed *ne* malum *quidem* Philosophi affirmant. — *Cic. Non modo,* quod non possumus, sed *ne* quantum possumus *quidem,* eogimur. — *Cic.*

§ 84. — COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

ADVERBS are compared, by taking the Neuter of the Comparative of the Adjective from which they come, as their Comparative; and by changing the last syllable of its Superlative into *mè,* for their Superlative: as *doctè, doctiùs, doctissimè; pulchrè, pulchriùs, pulcherrimè; malè, pejùs, pessimè.*

Obs. Here are to be noticed the Diminutive forms: as, *sæpiusculè, meliusculè, breviusculè.*

Digitized by Google

§ 85.—OF CONJUNCTIONS.

A CONJUNCTION is a part of speech that joineth together (*conjungit*) words and sentences; as, my father *and* my mother.

CONJUNCTIONS—COPULATIVE, which unite, are: *et, ac, atque, necnon, etiam, quoque, que* (enclitic); and, *neque, nec* NEITHER.

Obs. *Ac* stands only before *Consonants.* Before a *Vowel, atque* is to be used.

DISJUNCTIVE—*aut* (*aŭ, aŭte*), *vel* (volo, velle), *sive* (si, sit, vel), *seu, ve* (enclitic), OR.

Here are to be observed those which are repeated or united with some other Conjunction in the same clause: as,

EITHER followed by OR—*aut, aut; vel, vel.*

BOTH followed by AND—*cum, tum; et, et; tum, tum; tam, quam.*

Now followed by THEN—*modo, modo; modo, nunc.*

NEITHER followed by NOR—*neque, neque; neque, nec; nec, neque: nec, nec.*

WHETHER IT BE SO, OR SO—*sive, seu.*

Examples.

Et followed by *et,*

Et sapit *et* mecum facit *et* Jove judicat æquo.—*Hor.*

Et followed by *que,*

Et studiis annos septem dedit, insenuit*que.*—*Hor.*

Que followed by *et,*

Tribula*que,* trahea*que, et* iniquo pondere rastri.—*Virg.*

Que followed by *que* (in poetry),

Nessæ, Spio*que,* Thalia*que,* Cymodoce*que.*—*Virg.*

§ 86.—*On the difference of* AUT *and* VEL, *and the use of* SIVE, SEU, NEVE, NEU, *and* VE.

Obs.—AUT *diversa* sibi sensu et *contraria* jungit;
VEL dicta *emendat,* vel dictis *addere* gaudet,
SIVE et SEU quosvis gaudent *supponere* casus;
NEVE et NEU prohibent: AUT vertitur in VE Poetis.
Omnia quæ lyrico demonstrat carmine Flaccus:—

Digitized by Google

Quem Virum AUT *Heroa lyrâ,* VEL. *acri*
Tibiâ sumes celebrare, Clio?
AUT *in umbrosis Heliconis oris,*
AUT *super Pindo, gelidove in Hæmo.* —
Ille, SEU *Parthos Latio imminentes*
Egerit justo domitos triumpho,
SIVE *subjectos Orientis oris*
Seras et Indos —
NEVE *te nostris vitiis iniquum*
Ocyor aura
Tollat —
NEU *sinas Medos equitare inultos*
Te duce, Cæsar.

Aut prodesse volunt *aut* delectare Poetæ.
Aut famam sequere, *aut* sibi convenientia finge.
O Laertiade, quicquid dicam, *aut* erit *aut* non. — *Hor.*
Vel duo *vel* nemo. *Vel* clam *vel* cum scrobe. — *Pers.*

§ 87.

AFFIRMATIVE — SURELY, VERILY, *næ* (*vai*) generally before Pronouns; *prŏfecto* (pro-facto); *scilicet* (scire-licet), often ironical; *nimirum* (ne mirum sit); *nempe* (nam-pe); *quip-pe* (quid-pe), generally introducing a reason.

CONCESSIVE — ALTHOUGH, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quamquam, quamvis, ut;* HOWEVER MUCH YOU LIKE, *quamtumvis.*

OPPOSING — YET, *at, atqui, attămen, verum, enimvĕro, sed, tamen, verumtămen.*

CONDITIONAL — IF, *si, si forte;* IF ONLY, *si modo;* IF HOWEVER, *si tămen, sin, sin autem, sin vero, sin minus;* EXCEPT, *nisi, ni, nisi forte;* PROVIDED, *dummŏdo.*

CAUSAL — FOR, *etenim, enim, nam, namque;* SINCE, *cum, quando, quia, quod, quoniam, quandoquidem, siquidem, utpote, quippe.*

CONCLUSIVE — THEREFORE, *ergo, igitur, idcirco, ideo, itaque, quocirca.*

FINAL — IN ORDER THAT, *ut, quo;* LEST, *ne, ut ne, neve, neu, quin, quominus.*

TEMPORAL — BEFORE THAT, *antequam, priusquam;* AFTER THAT, *postquam;* UNTIL, *donec, quoad, dum;* WHILST, *donec, quamdiu, dum, quoad;* SO SOON AS, *simul ac;* SO OFTEN AS, *quoties.*

Digitized by Google

Obs. *Tamen, itaque, igitur,* can stand either as first *or* second words of a sentence. *Ve, que, nĕ* (interrogative) are enclitics, and commonly *follow* other words. *Enim, quoque, autem, quidem,* cannot *begin* a sentence.

§ 88.—OF PREPOSITIONS.

A PREPOSITION is a part of speech most commonly *set before* (*præpositа*) a Noun: as, *ad dextram* on the right hand; or else is joined in composition with it: as, *in-doctus* unlearned, *per-jucundus* very pleasant, *præ-dives* very rich, *sub-obscurus* rather obscure.

§ 89.—The Prepositions following have an ABLATIVE Case after them:

A, ab, abs from *or* by.
Absque without.
Clam without the knowledge of.
Coram before *or* in presence of.
Cum with.
De of *or* from.
E, ex of, from, *or* out of.
Præ, before *or* in comparison of.
Pro for.
Sine without.
Tenus up to *or* as far as.

Prepositions governing an ABLATIVE CASE:

Ablativum volunt hæ:
A, ab, absque, abs, *et* de,
Coram, clam, cum, ex, *et* e,
Sine, tenus, pro, *et* præ.

§ 90.—The remaining Prepositions have an ACCUSATIVE Case after them, and are

Ad to *or* at.
Adversum, adversus against.
Ante before.
Apud at *or* near.
Circa, circum, circiter about.
Cis, citra on this side.
Contra against.
Erga toward.
Extra without.
Infra beneath.
Inter between *or* among.
Intra within.
Juxta beside *or* nigh to.
Ob for *or* because of.
Penes in the power of.
Per by *or* through.
Pone behind.
Post after *or* since.
Præter beside *or* except
Prope nigh *or* near to.

Digitized by Google

Propter, propĭter near, for, *or* because of.
Secundum according to, along, *or* *Supra* above. [next.
Trans beyond.
Ultra beyond.
Usque until.
Versus towards.

Prepositions governing an ACCUSATIVE Case:

Exigunt accusativum,
Ante, apud, ad, adversum,
Circum, circa, citra, cis,
Erga, contra, inter, extra,
Infra, intra; *Adde* his
Juxta, ob, *et* penes, pōnĕ,
Post, *et* præter, prope, propter,
Per, secundum, supra, versus;
Ultra, trans *his junxeris.*

§ 91. — *Obs.* 1. *Ante* is often omitted in the reckoning of days: as ix Kalendas Octobres, i. e. ix *ante* Kalend. Oct.

Obs. 2. *Versus* is set *after* its case: as, *Londinum versus* towards London.

Likewise *pĕnĕs* may be so placed.

Obs. 3. *A* stands before all consonants but *h*.

Obs. 4. *Ab* stands before all vowels, and before all consonants but *m* and *v*.

Obs. 5. *Abs* stands before *q*, *r*, and *t*.

Obs. 6. *Cum* is set *after* some Pronouns: as, *mecum, tecum, quicum;* and *tenus* is set after its case: as *portâ tenus* as far as the gate; and in the Plural Number the Noun is commonly put in the Genitive Case: as, *aurium tenus* up to the ears.

§ 92.—The Prepositions following serve to *both* the ACCUSATIVE and ABLATIVE Cases.

In, for *into,* signifying motion to, *or* against, has an Accusative Case: as *eo in urbem* I go into the city; *oratio in Catilinam* a speech against Catiline.

In, for *in* only, without *motion,* serves to the Ablative Case: as, *in eo spes est* my hope is in him.

Sub: as, *sub noctem* a little before night; *sub oculos venit* it comes in sight; *sub judice lis est* the matter is before the judge: *sub dio* in the open air; *sub nocte* at night-time.

Digitized by Google

Subter: as, *subter terram* under the earth; *subter aquâ* under the water.

Super (motion to, Accus.): as, *super lapidem* upon a stone; (position, Abl.): as, *fronde super viridi* upon a green bough.

§ 93.—ON PECULIAR MEANINGS OF CERTAIN PREPOSITIONS.

1. Governing Accusative.

Ad summum at most.
Ad unum omnes to a man.
Ad mille homines as many as a thousand men.
Ad tempus from time to time.
Ad breve tempus for a short time.
Ad manum at hand.
Ad verbum literally.
Ad fistulam saltare to dance to the flute.
Ad quartum a Roma lapidem four miles from Rome.
Apud me at my house.
Apud Homerum, Virgilium, Horatium, &c. in Homer, Virgil, Horace, &c.
Apud judices before the judges.
Cis paucos dies within a few days.
Circiter meridiem about midday.
Extra culpam innocent.
Extra periculum safe.
Extra jocum seriously.
Inter cœnandum while at supper. — So, *inter legendum, equitandum, studendum, &c.*
Juxta patrem te amo I love you next after my father.
Ob oculos before the eyes
Per me licet you may, as far as I am concerned.
Per tres annos during three years.
Per te Deos oro I pray you by the Gods.
Per quietem in sleep.
Per vim violently.
Per jocum in sport.
Post homines natos since the beginning of the world.
Præter castra currit he runs past the camp.

Digitized by Google

Præter consuetudinem contrary to habit.
Præter modum immoderately.
Præter opinionem unexpectedly.
Secundum aurem vulnus accepit he received a wound in his ear.
Secundum flumen with the stream.
Secundum quietem in sleep.
Secundum te next to you.

§ 94.—2. Governing Ablative.

A fronte in front.
A puero from childhood.
A tergo behind.
Statim a prælio directly after the battle.
Tibi a bibliotheca your librarian.
Tibi ab epistolis your secretary.
Tibi a potione your cupbearer.
A rationibus an accountant.
Ab Africo tegitur it is shaded towards the South.
Ab his stare to be on their side.
Ab oculis doleo my eyes ache.
Non abs re foret it would not be foreign to the purpose.
Clam patre without the father's knowledge.
Cum imperio in command.
Cum telo armed.
Nobiscum facit it is on our side.
De cœlo servare to observe the heavens (as an augur).
De cœlo tactus struck by lightning.
De die from daytime.
De Gallis triumphat he triumphs over the Gauls.
De industria on purpose.
De integro afresh.
De republicâ bene meruit he deserved well of the state.
De scripto dicere to speak from paper.
E regione opposite.
E republica for the good of the state.
Statim e somno lavatur he bathes directly after sleeping.
Ex animo heartily.
Hæres ex asse sole heir.
Ex composito by consent.
Ex decreto according to decree.

Digitized by Google

Ex voto according to vow.
Ex testamento according to will.
Ex improviso unexpectedly.
Ex remige factus orātor become an orator from (being) a rower: so,
Ex nitido fit rusticus. — Ex humili potens. — *Hor.*
Ex vestigio forthwith.
Præ gaudio lacrymor I weep for joy.
Præ nobis magnus great when compared with us.
Pro concione speaking in the public assembly.
Pro rostris speaking in the public assembly.
Pro foribus before the door.
Faciam pro virili parte I will do as well as I can.
Prope abest a Sicilia it is near Sicily.

§ 95. — Governing both ACCUSATIVE and ABLATIVE Cases.

Mutatur in horas he changes from hour to hour.
In lucem to daybreak.
In os laudare to praise to his face.
Mirum in modum strangely.
In universum universally.
In ære alieno in debt.
In hoste Priamo in the case of Priam an enemy.
In loco at the proper occasion.
Sub galli cantum at cock-crow.
Sub idem tempus about the same time.

---

§ 96. — OF INTERJECTIONS.

AN INTERJECTION is a part of speech which is thrown between (*interjecta*), and betokeneth a sudden emotion of the mind, — be it grief: as, *heu* alas! *proh*, *væ*, *hei mihi!* — surprise: as, *vah! papæ!* — pleasure, admiration: as, *ejă*, *macte esto!* — or other passion.

Sometimes Nouns and Verbs are used as Interjections: as, *nefas! malum! miserabile! quæso, amabo, age, sodes* (*si audes*), *sis* (*si vis*), *agĕsis*, *agĕdum*.

Digitized by Google

§ 97.—ETYMOLOGY.

TREATS of the forming of Words.

Obs. 1. In Etymology, it is above all things necessary to note what letters are uttered by what Organs of the Voice.

Obs. 2. Letters uttered by the *same* organs are frequently interchanged with each other in the forming of words.

Obs. 3. The LABIALS, or Letters pronounced by the Lips, are B, F, M, P, V. The GUTTURALS, or Letters pronounced by the Throat, C, G, H, K, Q, X. The LINGUALS, or Letters pronounced by the Tongue, D, L, N, R, S, T.

Or thus—Lips, *b*, *f*, *m*, and *p* and *v*.
Throat, *g*, *h*, *k*, *q*, *x*, and *c*.
Tongue, *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, and *t*.

Cp. Gr. Gr. § 3.—Labials, π, β, φ.
Gutturals, κ, γ, χ.
Linguals, τ, δ, θ.

§ 98.—INTERCHANGE OF VOWELS.

A is changed into	E, *arma, inermis; halo, anhelus.*
	I, *manus, cominus, eminus.*
	U, *salsus, insulsus; lăbor, lubricus.*
E is changed into	I, *tenax, pertĭnax.*
	O, *terra, extorris.*
	U, *tego, tŭgŭrium*
I is changed into	U, *similis, simulo.*
O is changed into	E, ὀρὸς, *serum.*
	ἔροβος, *ervum.*
	γόνυ, *genu.*
	I, *locus, illĭco.*
	U, *hoc, adhuc.*
U is changed into	I, *famulus, familia.*
Æ is changed into	UI, *quæro, exquiro.*
AU is changed into	E, *audio, obēdio.*
	O, *fauces, suffoco; plaudo, explōdo.*
	U, *causa, accūso, excuso.*
Œ is changed into	U, *pœna, pūnio; Pœnus, Pūnicus.*

Obs. U after V was, in the Augustan age, generally written O: as *Divom, ævom*, for *Divum, ævum.*

Digitized by Google

§ 99.—Greek—U into υ, ὕλη, *sylva*.

AΙ into æ, Αἰνείας, *Æneas*; Αἰγαῖον, *Ægæum* (not *Ægeum*).

αι, Αἴας, *Ajax*.

ΕΙ into ε, Μουσεῖον, *musēum* (not *musæum*).

ι, Ἰφιγένεια, *Iphigenīa*.

ΟΙ into œ, ποίνη, *pœna*.

οι, Τροία, *Troja*.

OU into u, Μοῦσα, *mūsa*.—(Cp. Gr. Gr. § 2.)

§ 100.—INTERCHANGE OF CONSONANTS.

Labials—(b, f, m, *and* p *and* v):

Nubo, nupsi, nympha; νέφος, *nimbus*; *populus, publicus*; βρέμω, *fremo*.

Φέρω, *fero* (*bear*); *fortis, porto*; φλήρ, θλήρ, *fera*.

Βροτὸς, μορτὸς, *mortalis*.

Μέρος, *pars*; μύρμηξ, *formica*.

Πῦρ, *ferveo, febris* (*fire*); Πᾶν, *Faunus*; πῶλος, *pullus, foal, fowl*.

Βούλομαι, *volo*; βέω, *meo*; βάω, *vado*; βασκαίνω, *fascino*; βόσκω, *pasco, vescor*; *ovis, upilio*.

Gutturals—(g, h, k, q, x, *and* c):

Χάω, *hio hisco* (*chasm*); χάμαι, *humi*; χθὲς, *hĕri*; χελιδὼν, *hirundo*.

Κέω, κεῖμαι, *quies*; κόσος, *quotus*.

Κυβερνῶ, *guberno* (*govern*); δείκνυμι, *digitus*.

Traho, traxi, tractus, tragula.

Pertingo, pertĭca.

Sequor, sequundus, secundus.

Incolo, inquilinus.

Linguals—(d, l, n, r, s, *and* t):

Quatuor (τέσσαρες, τέτορες), *quadra*:

Δεινὸς, *dirus*; μονὴ, *mora*; πλήρης, *plenus*; δῶρον, *donum*.

Παῖς, *puer*; *haurio, hausi*; *gero, gessi*.

Ulysses, Odyssēa; μελετάω, *meditor*; ὄσδω, *odor, oleo*.

Θεὸς, *Deus*; θύρα, *fores* (*door*).

Μέσος, *medius*: *medius fidius* (*filius*).

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1. π is frequently changed into the Latin *c* and *qu*; as, ἵππος, *equus*; ἕπομαι, *sequor*, *secundus*, *socius*; πόσος, κόσος, *quotus*; πέπω, *coquo*; πέπων, *cicur*; τέτορες, πίσυρες, *quatuor*; λείπω, *linquo*.

Obs. 2. Many Latin forms are derived from Greek, through the Æolic dialect (*see above*, § 4 and *below* § 102 and § 120), by the change of certain letters: as,

1. σ and ρ: παῖς, ποῖρ, *puer*; ἔσομαι, *ero*.
2. β and γ: as, βάλανος, γάλανος, *glans*; γαλῆνὸς, *blandus*.
3. π and τ: as, στάδιον, σπάδιον, *spatium*; σπουδὴ, *studium*.

§ 101.—ASSIMILATION.

Assimilation is when a consonant changes itself to one which follows it, or to one like it: as, *submitto*, *summissus*.

B, in *ob* and *sub*, assimilates itself to the Labials and Gutturals: as *oppignero*, *suppono*, *offendo*, *occido*, *succurro*, *suggĕro*.

D, in *ad*, assimilates itself to all Linguals and Gutturals: as, *attraho*, *annuo*, *arrideo*, *accĕdo*, *acquiro*, *afficio*, *appono*, *assĕquor*.

M, in *com* (*cum*), assimilates itself to *l* and *r*, as *colligo*, *corruo*, and changes itself in *am* (*ambi*, ἀμφὶ), *com*, *circum*, and other words: as *quorum*, *circum*, *tantum*;—to *n*, especially before Labials and Gutturals: as, *anceps*, *anquiro*, *condo*, *congero*, *quoniam* (*quom jam*), *quondam* (*quom dam*), *eundem*, *septendecim*.

N, in *in*, assimilates itself to *l* and *r*: as, *illustris*, *irrideo*; and changes itself to *m* before Labials: as, *immunis*, *imberbis*, *impono*.

R, in *inter* and *per*, assimilates itself to *l*: as, *intelligo*, *pellucidus*.

§ 102.—INSERTION OF LETTERS.

V, the Æolic Digamma, or sixth letter of the old Greek Alphabet (Gr. Gr. § 1, *Obs.* 2), is inserted before and after vowels.

Thus *pluvia* from *pluo*, *exuviæ* from *exuo*; thus, *audio* makes *audivi*; *bos*, *bovis*; *idus*, *vidua*, *divido*.

So also *Divus* from δῖος; *clavis* from κλεῖς; *ovum* from ὠὸν; *ævum* from αἰὼν; *viscus* from ἰξὸς; *ver* from ἦρ; *vesper* from ἕσπερος; *venter* from ἔντερος; *vinum* from οἶνος; *vicus* from οἶκος; *viginti* from εἴκατι; *video* from εἰδέω; *vulpes* from ἀλώπηξ; *vox* from ὄψ; *novem* from ἐννέα; *novus* from νέος.

This letter often appears as *F*, and takes the place of *H*; as, *Formiæ*, for *Hormiæ* (ὁρμὸς, ὁρμίαι); *frigus* from ῥῖγος; *frangō* from ῥήγω.

Sometimes as *B*: as *bustum* for *ustum*.

Sometimes as *U*: as, *duellum* for *bellum*, *ninguo* for *ningo*.

Digitized by Google

C is inserted after *si, ne,* and *ali :* as *sicubi, necubi, alicubi.*

D is inserted after *re, pro, se :* as *redigo, prodigus, prodest, seditio.*

D, in the older Latin writings, stands at the end of Ablatives and Adverbs: as, *Gnaivod* for *Cnaeo, extrad* for *extra.*

R is inserted in declension : as, *vis, vires ; musa, musarum.*

S is inserted in place of the Greek breathing, especially the aspirate: as, *sub* from ὑπὸ; *super* from ὑπὲρ; *sum* from εἰμί; *sisto* from ἵστημι; *somnus* from ὕπνος; *salio* from ἅλλομαι; *sylva* from ὕλη; *sedeo* from ἕδω.

S is also inserted before consonants : as, γράφω, *scribo ;* κάραβος, *scarabæus.*

§ 103.—OMISSION OF LETTERS.

C, G, are omitted before another consonant: as,
Percunctor, percontor ;
Spargo, spargsi, sparsi ;
Exigo, exagmen, exāmen, exāmino,

M, omitted : as, *quamsi, quasi ;*
elided at end of words before vowels and *h ;* as,
Monstr', horrend', informe, ingens.

D, N, T, omitted before s: as,
Rado, radsi, rasi ; amants, amans ;
Adspiro, aspiro ; monstrum, mostellum ,
Obtundo, obtunsus, obtusus.

ST, omitted: as, *postmeridianus, pomeridianus.*

R, omitted : as *prorsa, prosa.*

S, elided at end of words: as,
Tum laterali' dolor certissimu' nuntiu' mortis. — Lucr.

§ 104.—FORMING OF WORDS.

OF NOUNS: SUBSTANTIVES—

1. Patronymics, 2. Gentiles or National Substantives, 3. Diminutives, 4. Appellatives, 5. Abstract Words.

§ 105.—I. PATRONYMICS (Gr. Gr. § 100) indicate the name of the father (πατρὸς ὄνομα), or ancestor from whom a person is descended. (Gr. Gr. § 101.)

Digitized by Google

Obs. Patronymics are generally formed from the Genitive Case, and in such a manner as to be admissible into an HEXAMETER Verse. They end in

1. *ădēs, ĭădēs:* as,

Ænēās,	*Ænĕădēs.*	*Thestius,*	*Thestĭădēs.*
Hippŏtēs,	*Hippotădēs.*	*Scipio,*	*Scipĭădēs.*
Anchīsēs,	*Anchisiădēs.*	*Amphitrўŏ,*	*Amphitryonĭădēs.*

2. *ĭdēs:* as *Prĭămŭs, Prĭămĭdēs;*
Cecrops, Cecropĭdēs;
Agēnor, Agenorĭdēs.
3. *ĭdes:* as, *Atreus, Atrĭdes.*

FEMININE PATRONYMICS end in

1. *ds ĭds:* as, *Thestius, Thestĭăs;*
Telamon, Telamonias;
Laertes, Laertias.
2. *ĭs:* as, *Tantălus, Tantălĭs;*
Briseus, Brisēĭs;
Acrisius, Acrisionēĭs;
Athamas, Athamantis;
Minos, Minōĭs.
3. *ĭnē, ĭŏne:* as, *Neptunus, Neptunĭnē;*
Acrisius, Acrisiŏnē.

§ 106.—II. GENTILE NOUNS indicate the Country to which a Person belongs.—(Gr. Gr. § 107.)

Gentile Nouns end in

1. *ĭus,* from countries in *us* and *os:* as, *Ægyptius, Cyprius, Rhodius.*
Obs. Virgil always uses *Troius,* never *Troicus;* Horace always uses *Troicus,* never *Troius.*
2. *ĭnus,* from countries in *ĕ, ĭm, ium,* and *ia:* as, *Prænestinus, Tarentinus, Latinus, Venusinus.*
3. *ānus, ensis,* from countries of the First and Third Declensions: as, *Albanus, Carthaginiensis.*
Obs. Hispanus is a Spaniard, but *Exercitus Hispaniensis* is an army raised in Spain.
4. *as,* Gen. *ātis,* from Italian places in *um,* and *a:* as, *Arpīnas, Capēnas.*
5. *ĭdes,* poetical: as, *Mœonia, Mœonides; Mœnalus, Mœnalides.*

The *feminines* in *is* and *ĭăs:* as, *Tœnarus, Tœnaris; Ilium, Ilĭăs; Castalia, Castălĭs; Helicon, Heliconis.*

Digitized by Google

Add to these other Gentile words:

Masculines: as, *Car, Macedo, Arabs.*

Common: as, *Arcăs*, Gen. *-ădis; Ligŭr*, Gen. *-ŭris.*

And purely Latin forms, *Samn-is*, Gen. *-ĭtis; Allo-brox*, Gen. *-brŏgis; A-fer*, Gen. *-fri*; *Veiens, Laurens, Camers, Tiburs.*

Also the Gentile Adjectives: as, *Sardōus* (from Σαρδὼ *Sardinia*), *Judăicus, Corinthiacus.*

§ 107.—III. DIMINUTIVES indicate a smaller size of the Primitives from which they come.—(Gr. Gr. § 101.)

Obs. 1. Diminutives usually take the Gender, and often the Termination, of their Primitives. Hence they serve as useful aids for remembering the *Genders* of their Primitives. Thus, by means of *corculum* it may readily be remembered that *cor* is neuter; by *flosculus, libellus, monticulus*, that *flos, liber, mons* are *masculine.*

Obs. 2. The Masculines end in *ellus, illus, ŏlus, ŭlus, ullus, culus, unculus.* The Feminines and Neuters in the corresponding forms in *a* and *um*: as,

Asinus, asellus.	*Lectus, lectulus.*
Caput, capitulum.	*Liber, libellus.*
Carbo, carbunculus.	*Mons, monticulus.*
Cōdex, codĭcillus.	*Mulier, muliercula.*
Cor, corculum.	*Munus, munusculum.*
Corpus, corpusculum.	*Negotium, negotiŏlum.*
Dies, diĕcula.	*Oratio, oratiuncula.*
Filius, filiŏlus.	*Pars, particula.*
Flos, flosculus.	*Plaustrum, plostellum*
Frater, fraterculus.	*Res, rĕcula.*
Homo, homuncio, homunculus, homullus.	*Rivus, rivulus.*
Hortus, hortulus.	*Rumor, rumusculus.*
Ignis, igniculus.	*Signum, sĭgillum.*
Lapis, lapillus.	*Uncia, unciŏla.*
	Vox, vocula.

So, also, in Proper Names: as, *Tullia, Tulliŏla*—Cic.: many of these are terms of endearment

Some end in *io, aster*, and *iscus*: as, *homo, homuncio; senex, senĕcio; olea, oleaster; Pan, Paniscus.*

Some have two forms: as, *avis, avicula, avicella* (Ital. uccello); *porcus, porculus, porcellus; os, osculum, oscillum; cista, cistula, cistella.*

Obs. 3. Some are from Greek Primitives: as κόραξ, *graculus*; κορη, *corinna, corilla* (girl).

Digitized by Google

Obs. 4. To these may be added the Diminutive Adjectives: *pulcher, pulchellus; parvus, parvulus, paulus; frigidus, frigidusculus; durior, duriusculus; major, majusculus; aureus, aureolus; miser, misellus; vetus, vetulus; minor, minusculus.*

§ 108.—IV. APPELLATIVES are (1) Personal, *i. e.* Names of Persons; (2) Local, of Places; (3) Real, of Things.

1. PERSONAL (Gr. Gr. § 104) ending —

In *ă*: as, *poeta, advĕna, scriba, incŏla.*
In *ānus*: as *veteranus.*
In *ārius*, trades: as *aviarius, carbonarius, statuarius*
In *īnus*: as *concubinus.*
In *o*, Gen. *-ōnis*, generally in a bad sense: as, *ludio, morio, aleo, comĕdo, bibo, prædo, lutro, rostio, cachinno.*
In *or*, Gen. *-ōris*: as, *cursor, lector, victor, janitor.*

2. LOCAL (Gr. Gr. § 103) ending —

In *ārium*: as, *granarium, ærarium, tabularium, aviarium.*
In *ōrium*: as, *diversorium, tentorium.*
In *ētum* (Greek *-ὸν*, Gen. *-ῶνος*), *-ictum, -ultum, -ustum*: as *myrtetum, rubetum, rosetum, lauretum, esculetum, arboretum, vinetum, saxetum, salictum, virgultum, arbustum.*
In *īle*, place of animals: as, *equile, bovile, caprile, hædile, suile.*
In *ŭlum*: as, *cubiculum.*
In *crum*: as, *lavacrum, sepulcrum.*
In *trīna, trīnum*: as, *tonstrina, pistrinum.*
In *trum*: as, *claustrum, rastrum.*

3. REAL (Gr. Gr. § 102) ending —

In *ŭlum*, instrument: as, *venabulum, operculum, ferculum.*
In *crum, trum*, instrument: as, *fulcrum, aratrum.*
In *men*: as, *flūmen* (*fluĭmen*), *agmen* (*agĭmen*), *lumen, regimen, specimen.*
In *mentum*, means: as, *alimentum, documentum, monŭmentum, argūmentum, instrūmentum.* —(Gr. Gr. § 104, 106.)

§ 109.—V. ABSTRACTIONS and PROPERTIES end

In *ia, tĭa, ĕdo, ĭdo, ĭtudo, tās, ĭtas, ĭtĕtas, tūs*: as, *audacia, clementia, avaritia, albedo, dulcedo, pinguedo, libido, cupido, altitudo, venustas, honestas, ædilitas, crudelitas, cupiditas, varietas, pietas, juventus, servitus* (*-ūtis*).

Digitized by Google

In *ium*, state or relation: as, *exilium, gaudium, conjugium, hospitium.*

In *io*, action: as, *lectio, reprehensio, optio.*

In *or*, bodily or mental state: as, *algor, pallor, timor, furor.*

In *ātus*: as, *equitatus, consulatus, auguratus, tribunatus.*

In *ĕla*: as, *tutela, corruptela.*

In *ūra*, mode, office: as, *junctura, usura, Censura, Prætura, Dictatura, Quæstura.*

§ 110. — Change of APPELLATIVE from MALE to FEMALE.

Us is changed to *a*: as, *cervus, cerva; socius, socia.*

Er into *ra*: as, *caper, capra; magister, magistra.*

Tor into *trix*: as, *victor, victrix; janitor, janitrix.*

O into *a*: as, *caupo, cŏpa; leo, lea.*

En into *ĭna*: as, *fĭdĭcen, fidĭcĭna; tĭbĭcen, tĭbĭcĭna.*

Some are irregular:

Avus becomes, in the Feminine, *avia; gallus, gallīna; hospĕs, hospĭta; nepos, neptis; rex, rēgīna; socer, socrus.*

Some are altogether unlike:

Aries, in Feminine, becomes *ovis; taurus, vacca; verres, scrōfa.*

Some are Greek, and follow Greek rules. — (Gr. Gr. § 107.)

Thus, *Poëta* becomes, in the Feminine, *Poëtrĭă; Psaltes, Psaltria; Spartiātă, Spartiātis; Sarmăta, Sarmătis; Æthiops, Æthiopissa; Phœnix, Phœnissa; Threx, Thressa; Cres, Cressa; Laco, Lacœna; Tros, Trōăs; Scytha, Scythĭs.* See above § 106.

§ 111. — FORMING OF ADJECTIVES. — (Gr. Gr. § 106.)

ADJECTIVES of the FIRST and SECOND DECLENSIONS end

In *icius* (from Nouns in *is*, with *i* short): as, *gentilĭcius.*

or *itius* (from Verbs and Nouns in *us*, with *i* long): as, *conductīcius, novītius, multītius.*

In *ĭcus* (from Nouns): as, *aulicus, bellicus, civicus.*

In *īcus* (from Verbs and Adverbs): as, *amicus, apricus* (*aperio*), *antiquus, antīcus* (*ante*).

In *ātĭcus*: as, *aquaticus, erraticus.*

In *ūcus*: as, *caducus.*

In *idus* (from Verbs), denoting bodily state, or quality: as, *frigidus, algidus, tepidus, humidus, candidus, rapidus, cupidus.*

Digitized by Google

In *undus*, denoting bodily or mental feeling or faculty (from Verbs): as, *irācundus, fācundus* (from *for, fāri*), *furĭbundus, jūcundus.*

In *ĕus* and *āceus*, denoting a material: as, *laneus, æreus, roseus, saxeus, aureus, marmoreus, testaceus.*

In *ĭus*, belonging to: as, *regius, patrius.*

In *ārius*: as, *contrarius, agrarius.*

In *arius*, holding so much: as, *sextarius* holding $\frac{1}{6}$th; *vicesimarius* holding $\frac{1}{20}$th.

In *ōrius*: as, *oratōrius, motōrius, adulatorius.*

In *lus*, diminutives. See above, § 107, *Obs. 4.*

In *ŭlus*, verbals: as, *bĭbulus, credulus, garrulus.*

In *ĭmus*: as, *maritimus, finitimus.*

In *ānus*: as, *humanus, montanus, Cæsarianus.*

In *ānus*, denoting the legion: as, *primanus* of the first legion.

In *ēnus*: as, *plenus, terrenus.*

In *ĭnus*, denoting material: as, *faginus, crystallinus.*

In *ĭnus*, denoting time: as, *crastinus, diutinus, nundinæ, hornotinus, perendinus, pristinus, serotinus*; all with *penultima* short, except *matutīnus* and *vespertīnus.*

In *īnus*, denoting quality: as, *agninus, caninus.*

In *ōnus*: as, *patronus.*

In *ernus*: as, *hibernus, æternus, hodiernus, hesternus.*

In *urnus*: as, *diurnus, nocturnus.*

In *ūnus*: as, *opportunus, jejunus.*

In *ōsus*: as, *animosus, belluosus, ventosus, saxosus, morosus, officiosus.*

In *ātus, ītus, ūtus*: as, *alātus, oculātus, aurītus, crinītus, cornūtus, astūtus.*

In *entus*: as, *violentus, gracilentus, luculentus.*

In *stus*: as, *nefastus, funestus, onustus.*

In *īvus*: as, *æstivus, stativus, furtivus, nocivus.*

Adjectives of the Third Declension end

In *ālis*: as, *regalis, hospitalis, glacialis.*

In *ēlis*: as, *crudelis, fidelis.*

In *ĭlis* (from Nouns): as, *juvenilis, herilis, senilis, virilis, puerilis.*

In *ĭlis* (from Verbs): as, *flexilis, pensilis, habilis, utilis, fissilis, rasilis, tonsilis, fragilis, coctilis, sculptilis, sectilis, facilis.*

In *bĭlis* (from Verbs): as, *penetrabilis, delebilis, nōbilis, volūbilis.*

In *ūlis*: as, *edulis.*

In *ātĭlis*: as, *aquātilis.*

Digitized by Google

In *ăris*: as, *popularis, vulgaris, salutaris.*
In *ensis*: as, *pratensis, forensis.*
In *stris*: as, *palustris, sublustris.*
In *ens*: as, *violens.*
In *es*: as, *locuples, -ĕtis.*
In *ber, bris, cer, cris*: as, *salŭber, salubris, ācer, acris.*
In *ax*: as, *ferax, edax, -ācis.*
In *ex*: as, *seminex, -ĕcis.*
In *ox*: as, *atrox, velox, -ōcis.*

Obs. In *mnus, mna, mnum*, derived from the Greek Participles Passive Present and Perfect: as, *stamnus* from *ἱστάμενος, columna* from *κεκολουμένη, lamna* from *ἐληλαμένη, ærumna* from *ἀλρομένη.*

§ 112. — FORMING OF VERBS. — (Gr. Gr. § 110.)

1. Inceptives: 2. Desideratives: 3. Frequentatives: 4. Diminutives.

Verbs derived from Nouns, if Transitive, have usually the termination of the First Conjugation; if Intransitive, of the Second: as, *albus, albare* to *make* white, *albēre* to *be* white.

Obs. But *nigrare* is neuter.

§ 113.—I. INCEPTIVES indicate the beginning of an action expressed in their Primitives. Inceptives are derived from the Second Person Singular Present Indicative Active of their Primitives by adding *co* or *cor.*

In *asco*: as, *collabasco, congelasco, inveterasco.*
In *esco*: as, *acesco, conticesco, marcesco, excandesco, frondesco, exardesco, frigesco, calesco, coalesco, convalesco, occallesco, pallesco, adolesco, inolesco, obsolesco, exolesco, aresco, horresco, duresco, delitesco, languesco, liquesco, effervesco.*
In *isco*: as, *scisco, glisco, ingemisco, tremisco, resipisco, fatisco.*

Nominal Inceptives are as follow: — *Advesperasco, repuerasco, increbresco, dulcesco, obsurdesco, recrudesco, vilesco, canesco, mitesco, innotesco, obmutesco, obbrutesco, ingravesco.*

Obs. Inceptives are *Neuter*, and of the Third Conjugation, and take (if any) the Perfects and Supines of their Primitives.

Digitized by Google

§ 114.—II. DESIDERATIVES indicate a desire to do something expressed in their Primitives. Desideratives end

In *ŭrio*; and are formed by changing the last syllable of the Supine in *um* into *ŭrio*: as, *ĕdo, ēsum, ēsŭrio; pĕrio, partum, partŭrio*; so, *emptŭrio, cœnatŭrio.*

Obs. Ligŭrio, scatŭrio, prŭrio, where the *u* is *long,* are not Desideratives.

§ 115.—III. FREQUENTATIVES indicate a repetition of the action expressed in their Primitives.—(Gr. Gr. § 111.) Frequentatives end

In *to, tor, ito*: as, *canto* from *căno, canĭto: volŭto* from *volvo, volutum: mĭnitor* (from *minor*), *sector, sciscitor: noscito, agito, rogito, clamito, sessito, factito, lectito, dictito, scriptito, fluito.*

Obs. Frequentatives are of the FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 116.—IV. DIMINUTIVES end

In *illo*: as, *cantillo* from *canto, conscribillo, sorbillo, focillo.*

REPETITIVE DIMINUTIVES end

In *ŭlo*: as, *ventilo.*

In *ŭlo, ŭlor*: as, *pullulo, gesticulor.*

Add to these

§ 117.—(1). INTENSIVES, which indicate eagerness of action, and end

In *sso*: as, *lacesso, facesso, capesso, appetisso.*

(2). IMITATIVES, which end

In *xo*: as, *atticizo, græcizo.*

In *co* and *cor*: as, *rhetorico, cornĭcor.*

(3). EFFECTIVES, which indicate the production of what is expressed in their Primitives, and end

In *ĭgo*: as, *mītĭgo,* to make *mitis* (tame); *lēvĭgo,* to make *levis* (smooth); (*jure ago, jurgo, objurgo*); *lite ago, litigo.*

OTHER DERIVATIVES end

In *ĭco, ĭcor,* Active: as, *vellico, fodico, medicor.*

Neuter: as, *albico, nigrico, rusticor.*

Digitized by Google

§ 118. — COMPOUNDED VERBS. — Many Compound Verbs are formed from Simple Verbs, with a Preposition, by changing

A into *e*: as, *arceo, coerceo; patior, perpetior; carpo, decerpo; scando, ascendo; spargo, aspergo; fallo, refello.*

A into *i*: as, *căndo, occīdo; salio, desilio; taceo, conticeo.*

A into *u*: as, *calco, conculco; altus, exulto.*

Æ into *ī*: as, *lædo, illīdo; cædo, occīdo.*

E into *i*: as, *emo, redimo; lego, colligo; rego, corrigo; teneo, abstineo.*

Au into *ĕ*, *o*, and *u*: as, *audio, obĕdio; plaudo, explōdo, supplōdo; claudo, inclūdo.*

Obs. See *As in Præsenti*, vv. 111—151.

Obs. Simple Verbs, which have a reduplication, lose it in composition: as, *tondeo, totondi; detondeo, detondi.*

Except compounds of *do, sto, disco, posco:* as, *circumdo, circumdedi.*

See below, *As in Præsenti*, vv. 94—98.

§ 119.— FORMING OF ADVERBS.— (Gr. Gr. § 112.)

Adverbs signifying the *manner* in which any thing is done, end

In *ā*: as, *rectā* (*viâ*), *frustrā.*

In *ē*: as, *doctē, liberē, pulchrē, planē.*

In *ō*: as, *liquidō, falsō, crebrō.*

Obs. 1. These are, properly, Ablative Cases of Adjectives in *us.*

In *ĕ*: as, *facilĕ.*

Obs. 2. These are Neuter Accusatives of Adjectives in *is*

In *ariam*: as, *bifariam, multifariam.*

In *tĕr*: as, *clementer, audacter, fortiter.*

In *iter*: as, *aliter.*

In *is*: as, *gratis, foris.*

In *sim*: as, *sensim, divisim, cæsim, passim* (from *pando*), and

In *tim*: as, *strictim, punctim, striatim.*

Obs. 3. These two last forms are from Supines of Verbs.

In *tim*: as, *partim.*

Obs. 4. These are Accusative Cases of Substantives.

In *tĕ*: as, *spontĕ.*

In *ātim*: as, *gregatim* herd by herd; *estiatim* house by house; *vicatim* street by street; *catervatim, cuneatim, minutatim, turmatim.*

In *ītim*: as, *virītim* man by man; and

In *ūtim*: as, *tribūtim* tribe by tribe.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 5. These three last Terminations correspond to the Greek ηδον, and signify the taking of the things, expressed by the Primitive, *one by one.* In *itus*: as, *antiquitus, divinitus, funditus.*

§ 120. — ETYMOLOGY OF PREPOSITIONS.

A, ab, abs, absque, ἀπό.
Ad, apud.
Adversum: see *Versus.*
Ante, ἀντί.
Apud, apio (apitum), ἅπτω, apto.
Circa, circum, circiter, κίρκος, κίρκον.
Cis, ci-tra (ce, in hic-ce; trahens).
Clam, celo, κλέπτω, καλύπτω.
Con-tra, cum-tra (traho).
Coram, χώραν.
Cum, ξὺν (κσύν).
De, διά.
Erga, ὀρέγω.
E, ex, extra, ἐκ, ἐξ.
In, ἐν.
Infra, in-fra (fero).
Intra, in-tra (traho).
Juxta, junxta (jungo).
Ob, ἔπω, or ἕπομαι.
Palam, πέλας.
Penes (connected with pendeo, to *hang* or *depend upon*).
Per, περί.
Post, pone, positus, postus (*from* pono).
Præ, præter, / *Pro, prope, propter,* } παρὰ, πρό.
Secundum, sequor, sequundus.
Sine, ἄνευ.
Sub, subter, ὑπό.
Super, ὑπέρ.
Tĕnus, τείνω, tendo.
Trans, trahens.
Versus, versus, verto (εἴρω, ἐρύω).
Ultra, ille trahens.
Usque, ἕως κε.

Obs. The Æolic dialect rejected the aspirate; hence it has disappeared from many Latin words (as *coram, ob, usque*) derived from the Greek: and in others it appears as s or v. (See § 100, and § 102 Obs. 2).

Digitized by Google

§ 121.—ETYMOLOGICAL FIGURES.

Prosthĕsis adds at beginning: as, *stlis* for *lis*. — *Epenthĕsis* in middle: as, *sies* for *sis*. — *Paragōgē* at end: as, *dicier* for *dici*.

Aphærĕsis takes away at beginning: as, *nosco* for *gnosco*; *Episcŏpus*, *Vescŏvo* (Ital.) *Bishop* (Engl.); ἀποθήκη, *apothĕca*, *bottĕga* (Ital.); *boutique* (Fr.), *booth* (Engl.) — *Syncŏpe* in middle: as, *caldus* for *calidus*; *periclum* for *periculum*; *puertia* for *puerĭtia*; *surpuerat* for *surripuerat*. — *Apŏcŏpē* at end: as, *inger* for *ingere*; *dic* for *dice*.

Antithĕsis changes one letter for another: as, *bubus* for *bobus*. — *Metathĕsis* alters the *place* of the same: as, *lac* from γάλα; *pulmo* from πλευμών; *forma* from μόρφη; *certum* for *cretum*; *rapax* from ἅρπαξ; *nervus* from νεῦρον; *tener* from τέρην; *pistris* for *pristis*; *cŏlurnus* for *corulnus*, for *corŭllnus*, from *corŭllus*, hazel.

§ 122. — *Obs.* The dependence of Prosody on Etymology will be seen below in Prosodia, § 172, p. 187. Observe here, that the Quantity of Primitives may be easily learnt from the Pronunciation of their Derivatives. Thus, from the Pronunciation of *collĭgo*, *redĭmo*, *dirĭgo*, *exĭgo*, it may readily be remembered that the first syllable of *lego*, *emo*, *rego*, *ago*, is *short*; and conversely, it may be easily remembered, for example, from the pronunciation of *audio*, that the ē in *obedio*, its derivative (see § 118), is *long*.

§ 123.—ORTHOGRAPHY.

Obs. 1. Orthography depends mainly on Etymology. Thus we should write *fecundus* not *fœcundus*, *fenus* not *fœnus*, *felix* not *fœlix*, being derived from *feo*, connected with φύω *fuo*; *letum* not *lethum*, from *leo*, (*lino*). Hence also *femina* is more correct than *fœmina*. So also write *prelum* not *prælum*, from *premo*: *ancora* not *anchora*, from ἄγκυρα: *Halcyon* not *Alcyon*, from ἀλκύων: *Bosporus* not *Bosphorus*, from Βόσπορος: *postumus* not *posthumus*, from *post*: *Siren* not *Syren*, from Σειρήν: *Sphinx* not *Sphynx*, from Σφίγξ: *tropæum* not *trophæum*, from τροπαῖον; *Museum* not *Musæum*, from μουσεῖον.

Obs. 2. Orthography is also governed by authority, *i. e.* by practice, as seen in ancient Inscriptions, Coins, and Manuscripts.

Digitized by Google

§ 124.—THE THREE CONCORDS EXPLAINED.

THERE are three Concords or Agreements in Latin.

1. Between the Nominative Case and the Verb.
2. Between the Substantive and the Adjective.
3. Between the Antecedent and the Relative.

---

§ 125.—THE FIRST CONCORD.

A VERB agrees with its Nominative Case, in Number and Person.

In order to find out the Nominative Case, ask the question *who?* or *what?* with the Verb; and the word that answers to the question is the Nominative Case to the Verb: as,

Præceptor legit, vos vero negligitis.
The *master* reads, but *ye* regard not.

Who reads? The Master. Who regards not? Ye. — *Master* and *ye* are the Nominative Case.

Obs. In this sentence *Præceptor* is termed the *Subject*, and *legit* is the Predicate. Alterum est *quod* loquimur, alterum *de quo* loquimur. — *Quintil.* i. 4.

Sometimes an Infinitive Mood, or a Sentence, is the Nominative Case to the Verb; and sometimes is the Substantive to an Adjective; and sometimes is the Antecedent to a Relative; and in this case the Adjective and the Relative must be in the Neuter Gender: as,

Diluculo surgere saluberrimum est.
To rise at day-break is very wholesome.
In tempore veni, quod omnium est primum.
I came in season, which is the chief thing of all.

Many Nominative Cases Singular have a Verb Plural, which agrees with the Nominative Case of the most worthy person. In Latin, the First Person is said to be more worthy than the Second, and the Second more worthy than the Third: as

Ego et tu sumus in tuto.
I and thou are in safety.

Digitized by Google

The Substantive which comes next after the Verb, and answers to the question *whom?* or *what?* made by the Verb, will commonly be in the Accusative Case; except the Verb, by some particular rule, requires another case after it: as,

Si cupis placere magistro, quem amas, utere diligentiâ.
If you desire to please the master, whom you love, use diligence.

Obs. In this Example, *magistro* is not in the Accusative, but the Dative, and *diligentiâ* is in the Ablative Case, according to a *special* rule.

---

§ 126.—THE SECOND CONCORD.

When you have an Adjective, ask the question *who?* or *what?* with the Adjective, and the word that answers to the question will be the Substantive to the Adjective.

The Adjective, whether it be a Noun, Pronoun, or Participle, agrees with its Substantive, in Case, Gender, and Number: as,

Amicus certus in re incertâ cernitur.
A certain friend is discerned in an uncertain matter.

Obs. 1. The Masculine Gender is more worthy than the Feminine, and the Feminine more worthy than the Neuter. In things without life, the Neuter Gender is considered as most worthy; and in this case, though the Substantive or Antecedent be of the Masculine or Feminine Gender, and not of the Neuter, yet may the Adjective or Relative be put in the Neuter: as,

Arcus et calami sunt bona.
The bow and arrows are *good* (Neuter).
Arcus et calami, quæ fregisti.
The bow and arrows, *which* (Neut.) thou hast broken.

Obs. 2. When several Substantives Singular are joined together, they will have an Adjective Plural, which Adjective

Digitized by Google

will agree with the Substantive of the most worthy Gender: as,

Rex et regina beati.
The king and the queen are *blessed* (Masc.).

Also, when in English the word *thing* is put with an Adjective, you may in Latin leave out the Substantive and put the Adjective in the Neuter Gender: as,

Multa me impedierunt.
Many (Neut.) *things* have hindered me.

§ 127.—THE THIRD CONCORD.

When you have a Relative, ask this question, *who?* or *what?* with the Verb, and the word that answers to the question is the Antecedent to the Relative.

The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender Number, and Person: as,

Vir sapit, qui pauca loquĭtur.
The man is wise, *who* speaketh few words.

Obs. 1. If the Relative refers to two Antecedents, or more, then it will be put in the Plural Number: as,

Tu multum dormis, et sæpe potas; quæ ambo sunt corpori inimĭca.
Thou sleepest much, and drinkest often; *both which* things are naught for the body.

Obs. 2. When the English word *that* may be turned into *who* or *which,* it is a Relative, otherwise it is a Conjunction, expressed in Latin by *quod* or *ut;* and in making Latin, if the preceding Verb express a *sense* or *feeling,* the Conjunction may be better put away, and the Nominative Case to the Verb turned into the *Accusative,* and the Verb into the *Infinitive* Mood: as,

Gaudeo te bene valere.
I am glad *that* thou art in good health.

Digitized by Google

OF

THE GENDERS OF NOUNS.

§ 128.—I. SUBSTANTIVES.

PROPER NAMES.

1. Masculine.

PROPRIA *quæ maribus tribuuntur mascula dicas;*
Ut sunt Divorum; Mars, Bacchus, Apollo: Virorum;
Ut Cato, Virgilius: Fluviorum; *ut,* Tibris, Orontes:
Mensium; *ut,* October: Ventorum; *ut,* Libs, Notus, Auster:
Montium; *ut,* Othrys, Eryx—Ætna *excipiatur, et* Œta,
Cyllēne, Rhŏdŏpē, Calpe, *excipiantur et* Alpes,
Fœmineæ quæ sunt;—neutrum Soracte *notetur.*

2. Feminine.

Propria Fœmineum referentia nomina sexum,
Fœmineo generi tribuuntur, sive Dearum
Sint; ut, Juno, Venus: Muliebria; *ut,* Anna, Philōtis:
Urbium; *ut,* Elis, Opus: Regionum; *ut,* Græcia, Persis:
Insulæ *item nomen; ceu* Creta, Britannia, Cyprus.
Excipienda tamen quædam sunt Urbium; ut istà
Mascula; Sulmo, Agrăgas: *quædam neutralia; ut* Argos,
Tĭbur, Præneste: *et genus* Anxur *quod dat utrumque.*

NOUNS APPELLATIVE.

1. Feminine Gender.

Fœminei generis Plantæ, Gemmæque *Latinè,*
Ut myrtus, sapphirus, *erunt; et nomina vulgo*
Appellativa Arbŏrum *erunt muliebria; ut,* alnus,
Cupressus, cedrus. *Mas* spinus, *mas* oleaster,
Carduus, hellebŏrus, calămus, rubus, asphodĕlus-*que*
Asparăgus, narcissus, amărăcus, *est et* acanthus
Mas; sunt neutra siler, suber, thus, robur, acer-*que.*

Digitized by Google

2. EPICENE GENDER.

Sunt etiam VOLUCRUM, *ceu* passer, hirundo: FERARUM,
Ut, tigris, vulpes: *et* PISCIUM, *ut*, ostrea, cetus,
Dicta epicœna; quibus vox ipsa genus feret aptum.

3. NEUTER GENDER.

Attamen ex cunctis supra, reliquis-que, notandum,
Omne quod exit in um, *seu Græcum sive Latinum,*
Esse genus neutrum; sic invariabile nomen,
Ut cornu *atque* genu, Tempe, fas, nil, nihil, instar.

First Special Rule.

NOUNS *NOT INCREASING.*

FEMININE.

Nomen non crescens genitivo; ceu, caro carnis,
Capra capræ, nubes, nubis; *genus est muliebre.*

1. NOUNS MASCULINE *excepted.*

Mascula nomina in A *dicuntur multa virorum;*
Ut, scriba, asseclá, scurra, *et sic* lixa, lanista.
Mascula, Græcorum quot declinatio prima
Fundit in AS, *et in* ES; *et ab illis quot per* A *fiunt:*
Ut, satrapas satrapa, athletes athleta. *Leguntur*
Mascula item, verres, natalis, aqualis: *ab asse*
Nata, ut centussis: *conjunge* lienis, *et* orbis,
Callis, caulis, follis, collis, mensis, *et* ensis,
Fustis, funis, cenchris, panis, crinis, *et* ignis,
Cassis, fascis, torris, sentis, piscis, *et* unguis,
Et vermis, vectis, postis; *sic* axis, *et* amnis.

Mascula in ER; *ceu,* venter: *in* OS, *vel* US; *ut* logos, annus.
Fœminei at generis sunt, mater, humus, domus, alvus,
Et colus; *et quartæ pro fructu* ficus, acus-*que,*
Porticus, *atque* tribus, socrus, nurus, *et* manus, idus;
Huc anus *addenda est, huc mystica* vannus *Iacchi.*

His jungas OS *in* US *vertentia Græca,* papyrus,
Antidŏtus, costus, diametrus, byssus, abyssus,
Diphthongus, synŏdus, methŏdus, dialectus, *et* arctus,
Cum multis aliis, quæ nunc perscribere longum est.

Digitized by Google

2. NOUNS NEUTER *excepted.*

Neutrum nomen in E *est, si gignit* IS, *ut* mare, rete;
Et quot in ON, *quæ flexa per* I, *ceu* barbĭton; *adde*
His virus, pelagus: *neutrum modo, mas modo,* vulgus;
Adde chaos, melŏs *a Græcis, sic* cetŏs, epos-*que.* 55

3. NOUNS *of the* DOUBTFUL GENDER *excepted.*

Incerti generis sunt talpa, *et* dama, canalis,
Et cytisus, bălănus, clunis, finis-*que*, penus-*que*,
Pampĭnus, *et* corbis, linter, torquis, specus, anguis;
Pro morbo ficus fici *dans, atque* phaselus,
Lēcўthus, *atque* atŏmus, grossus, phărus, *et* paradīsus. 60

4. NOUNS *of the* COMMON *of two* GENDERS *excepted.*

Compositum a verbo dans A, *est commune duorum;*
Grajugĕna *a gigno,* agricŏla *a colo, id* advĕna *monstrant*
A venio: adde senex, aurĭga, *et* vernа, sodalis,
Vates, extorris, patruelis, per-*que*-duellis,
Affinis, juvenis, testis, civis, canis, hostis. 65

Second Special Rule.

NOUNS *INCREASING LONG.*

FEMININE.

Nomen, crescentis penultĭma si genitivi
Syllaba longa sonat, velut hæc, pietas pietātis,
Virtus virtūtis, *monstrant, genus est muliebre.*

1. NOUNS MASCULINE *excepted.*

Mascula dicuntur monosyllaba nomina quædam:
Sal, sol, ren, *et* splen, Car, Ser, vir, vas vadis, as, mas, 70
Bes, Cres, præs, *et* pes, glis gliris *habens genitivo,*
Mos, flos, ros, *et* Tros, mus, dens, mons, pons, *simul et* fons,
Seps *pro serpente, et* gryps, Thrax, rex, grex gregis, *et* Phryx.

Mascula sunt etiam polysyllaba in N: *ut* Acarnan,
Lichen, *et* delphin: *et in* O *signantia corpus;* 75.
Ut leo, curculio: *sic* senio, ternio, sermo.

Digitized by Google

Mascula in ĒR, OR, *et* OS: *ceu* crater, conditor, heros;
His, torrens, nefrens, oriens, *conjunge,* cliens-*que;*
Atque bidens *instrumentum, cum pluribus in* DENS;
Adde gigas, elephas, adamas, Garamas-*que,* tapes-*que,*
Atque lebes, *sic et* magnes, *unumque* merĭdies *nomen quintæ; et quæ componuntur ab asse,*
Ut dodrans, semis: *jungantur mascula,* Samnis,
Hydrops *et* thorax: *jungas quoque mascula,* vervex,
Phœnix, *et* bombyx *pro vermiculo. Tamen ex his*
Sunt muliebre genus, Siren, *necnon* soror, uxor.

2. NOUNS NEUTER *excepted.*

Sunt neutralia et hæc monosyllaba nomina: mel, fel,
Lac, far, ver, æs, cor, vas vasis, os ossis, *et* oris,
Rus, thus, jus, crus, pus. *Et in* AL *polysyllaba, in* AR-*que:*
Ut capital, laquear. *Neutrum* al-ec, -ex *muliebre.*

3. NOUNS *of the* DOUBTFUL GENDER *excepted.*

Sunt dubii generis, scrobs, serpens, bubo, rudens, grus,
Perdix, lynx, limax, stirps *pro trunco, pedis et* calx:
Adde dies, *numero tantum mas esto secundo.*

4. NOUNS *of the* COMMON *of two* GENDERS *excepted.*

Sunt commune, parens, auctor-*que,* infans, adolescens,
Dux, illex, hæres, exlex: *a fronte creata,*
Ut bifrons: custos, bos, fur, sus, *atque* sacerdos.

Third Special Rule.

NOUNS *INCREASING SHORT.*

MASCULINE.

Nomen, crescentis penultima si genitivi
Sit brevis, ut sanguis, *genitivo,* sanguĭnis, *est mas.*

1. NOUNS FEMININE *excepted.*

Fœminei generis sit hyperdissyllabon in DO,
Quod dĭnis, *atque in* GO, *quod dat* gĭnis, *in genitivo:*
Id tibi dulcedo *faciens* dulcedinis; *idque*
Monstrat compago compaginis; *adjice* virgo,

Digitized by Google

Grando, fides, compes, teges, *et* seges, arbor, hyems-*que;*
Sic chlamys, *et* sindon, Gorgŏn, īcon, *et* Amazon.

Græcula in AS, *vel in IS, finita, ut,* lampas, iaspis,
Cassis, cuspis; *item* mulier, pecus *et* pecŭdis *dans:*
Fœmineis forfex, pellex, carex-*que,* supellex,
Appendix, hystrix, coxendix, *adde,* filix-*que.*

2. Nouns Neuter *excepted.*

Est neutrale genus signans rem non animatam
Nomen in A, *ut* problema; EN, *ut* omen; AR, *ut* jubar;
UR-que,
Ut jecur; US-*que, ut* onus; PUT, *ut* occiput. *Attamen ex his*
Mascula sunt, pecten, furfur. *Sunt neutra,* cadaver,
Verber, iter, suber, *pro fungo* tuber, *et* uber,
Gingiber, *et* laser, cicer, *et* piper, *atque* papaver,
Et siser: *his addas neutra,* æquor, marmor, ador-*que;*
Atque pecus *quando* pecŏris *facit in genitivo.*

3. Nouns *of the* Doubtful Gender *excepted.*

Sunt dubii generis, cardo, margo, cinis, imbrex,
Forceps, *et* pumex, cortex, *et* pulvis, adeps-*que:*
Adde culex, natrix, *et* onyx *cum prole,* silex-*que,*
Quamvis hæc melius vult mascula dicier usus.

4. Nouns Common *excepted.*

Communis generis sunt ista: vigil, pugil, exul,
Præsul, homo, *et* nemo, martyr, Ligur, augur, *et* Arcas,
Antistes, miles, pedes, interpres, comes, hospes,
Sic ales, præses, princeps, auceps, eques, obses;
Atque alia a verbis quæ nomina multa creantur;
Ut, conjux, judex, vindex, opifex, *et* aruspex.

§ 129. — II. ADJECTIVES.

Adjectiva *unam duntaxat habentia vocem,*
Ut, felix, audax, *retinent genus omne sub una:*
Sub geminā si voce cadant, velut, omnis *et* omne,
Vox commune duûm prior est, vox altera neutrum:

Digitized by Google

At si tres variant voces, sacer, *ut,* sacra, sacrum,
Mas prima, altera vox est fœmina, tertia neutra.

Obs. 1 *At sunt quæ flexu prope substantiva vocares,*
Adjectiva tamen natura usuque reperta:
Talia sunt pauper, puber, *cum* degĕner, uber,
Et dives, locŭples, sospes, comes, *atque* superstes;
Cum paucis aliis, quæ lectio justa docebit.

Obs. 2. *Hæc proprium quendam sibi flexum adsciscere gaudent;*
Campester, volŭcer, celĕber, celer, *atque* salūber;
Junge pedester, equester, et ācer; *junge* paluster,
Atque alăcer, sylvester. *At hæc tu sic variabis,*
Hic celer, hæc celeris, *neutro* hoc celere: *Aut alĭter sic,*
Hic *atque* hæc celeris, *rursum* hoc celere *est tibi neutrum.*

§ 130. — NOUNS HETEROCLITE (ἑτερόκλιτα), OR IRREGULAR.

QUÆ genus *aut* flexum variant, *quæcunque novato*
Ritu deficiunt, superant*ve,* HETEROCLITA *sunto.*

NOUNS *changing their* GENDER *and* DECLINING.

Hæc genus, *ac* flexum, *partim* variantia *cernis:*
Pergămus *in numero plurali* Pergama *gignit.*
Dat prior his numerus neutrum genus, alter utrumque:
Rastrum *cum* fræno, *et* clathrum, porrum*que* siser*que;*
Fræna *sed et* fræni, *quo pacto et cætera formant,*
Sibilus, *atque* jocus, locus.—*His quoque plurima jungas.*

Digitized by Google

NOUNS DEFECTIVE.

QUÆ *sequitur*, manca *est* casu numero*ve*, *propago*.

I. APTOTA (ἄπτωτα), *or* NOUNS *undeclined*.

Quæ nullum variant casum: ut, fas, nil, nihil, instar.
Multa et in U, *simul* I: *veluti*, cornu*que*, genu*que*;
Sic gummi, frugi; *sic* Tempe, tot, quot, *et omnes*
A tribus ad centum numeros, aptota *vocabis*.

II. MONOPTOTA, *or* NOUNS *declined with* one *Case*.

Estque MONOPTOTON *nomen, cui vox cadit una:*
Ceu, noctu, natu, jussu, injussu, *simul* astu,
Promptu, permissu: *plurali legimus* astus,
Legimus inficias, *sed vox ea sola reperta est*.

III. DIPTOTA, or NOUNS *declined with* two *Cases*.

Sunt DIPTOTA, *quibus duplex flexura remansit:*
Ut, fors forte *dabit sexto*, spontis-*que* sponte;
Jugeris *et sexto dat* jugere; verberis *autem*
Verbere; suppetiæ *quarto quoque* suppetias *dant*,
Tantundem *dat* tantidem, impetis impete *format*.
Sic repetundarum repetundis. Verberis *autem*
Plurali casus cum jugere *quatuor optat*.

IV. TRIPTOTA, *or* NOUNS *declined with* three *Cases*.

Tres quibus inflectis casus, TRIPTOTA *vocantur:*
Sic opis *est nostræ, fer* opem *legis, atque* ope *dignus:*
Flecte preci, *atque* precem, *petit et* prece *blandus amicum;*
At tantum recto frugis *caret, et* ditionis;
Integra vox vis *est, nisi desit forte dativus;*
His vicis *atque* vicem *junge et* vice; plus *quoque* pluris,
Plus *habet et quarto: His numerus datur omnibus alter*.

V. NOUNS *wanting the* Plural Number.

Propria cuncta notes, quibus est natura coercens,
Plurima ne fiant: alia et tibi multa legenti
Occurrent, numerum raro excedentia primum.

Digitized by Google

VI. Nouns *wanting the* Singular Number.

Mascula sunt tantum numero contenta secundo,
Manes, majores, cancelli, liberi, *et* antes,
Et lemures, proceres, fasti, *simul atque* minores,
Posteri, *et* hi Superi, natales; *adde* penates,
Et loca plurali, quales Gabii*que*, Locri*que*,
Et quæcunque legas passim similis rationis.

Hæc sunt fœminei generis, numerique secundi:

Exuviæ, phalĕræ, grates*que*, *et* mănŭbiæ, *et* idus,
Nundĭnæ, *itemque* indūtiæ, *item* insidiæ*que*, minæ*que*,
Excubiæ, nonæ, nugæ, tricæ*que*, calendæ,
Quisquiliæ, thermæ, cunæ, diræ, exequiæ*que*,
Feriæ, *et* inferiæ; *sic* primitiæ*que*, plagæ*que*
Retia signantes, et valvæ, divitiæ*que*.
Nuptiæ *item, et* lactes; *addantur* Thebæ *et* Athenæ,
Quod genus invenias et nomina plura locorum.

Rarius hæc primo pluralia neutra leguntur:
Mœnia, *cum* tesquis, præcordia, lustra *ferarum*,
Arma, mapalia; *sic* bellaria, munia, castra;
Funus justa *petit, petit et* sponsalia *virgo;*
Rostra *disertus amat, puerique* crepundia *gestant,*
Infantesque colunt cunabula; *consulit* exta
Augur, et absolvens superis effata *recantat;*
Festa deum poterunt, ceu Bacchanalia, *jungi:*
Quod si plura leges, licet hac quoque classe reponas.

Nouns *declined after both the* Second *and* Fourth Declensions.

Hæc simul et quarti flexûs sunt atque secundi:
Laurus *enim* lauri *facit et* laurûs *genitivo,*
Sic quercus, pinus, *pro fructu atque arbore* ficus;
Sic colus, *atque* penus, cornus *quando arbor habetur;*
Sic lacus *atque* domus: *licet hæc nec ubique recurrant.*
His quoque plura leges, quæ priscis jure relinquas.

Digitized by Google

OF THE

PRETERPERFECT TENSE AND SUPINES OF VERBS.

§ 131.—I. PRETERPERFECT TENSE OF SIMPLE VERBS.

First Conjugation.

As makes *āvi.*

AS *in præsenti perfectum format in* AVI:
Ut no nas navi, vocĭto vocitas vocitavi.
Deme lavo lavi, jŭvo jūvi, nexo*que* UI *dans,*
Et seco *quod* secui, *sic et* mico *quod* micui *dat,*
Sic plico *quod* plicui, *sic et* frico *quod* fricui *dat.*
Sic domo *quod* domui, tono *quod* tonui, sono *verbum*
Quod sonui, crepo *quod* crepui, veto *quod* vetui *dat,*
Atque cubo cubui: *raro hæc formantur in* avi.
Do das *rite* dĕdi, sto stas *formare* stĕti *vult.*

Second Conjugation.

Ēs makes *ŭi.*

Es *in præsenti perfectum format* UI *dans:*
Ut nigreo nigres nigrui: jubeo *excĭpe* jussi;
Sorbeo sorbui *habet* sorpsi *quoque* mulceo mulsi;
Luceo *vult* luxi, sedeo sedi, video*que*
Vult vidi: *sed* prandeo prandi, strideo stridi,
Suadeo suasi, rideo risi, *habet* ardeo *et* arsi.

Quatuor his infra geminatur syllaba prima:
Pendeo *namque* pependi, mordeo *vultque* momordi,
Spondeo *habere* spospondi, tondeo *vultque* totondi.

L *vel* R *ante* GEO *si stet,* GEO *vertitur in* SI:
Urgeo *ut* ursi; mulgeo mulsi *dat quoque* mulxi,
Frigeo frixi, lugeo luxi, *habet* augeo *et* auxi.

Dat fleo fles flevi, leo les levi, *indeque natum*
Deleo delevi; pleo ples plevi, neo nevi.

A maneo mansi *formatur;* torqueo torsi:
Hæreo *vult* hæsi. VEO fit VI: ferveo fervi:

Digitized by Google

Niveo, *et inde satum poscit* conniveo, nivi
Et nixi; cieo civi, vieo*que* vievi.

Third Conjugation.

Tertia *præteritum formabit ut hîc manifestum;*
Bo *fit* bi: lambo lambi: scribo *excipe* scripsi,
Et nubo nupsi; *antiquum* cumbo cubui *dat.*

Co *fit* ci: vinco, vici: *vult* parco peperci,
Et parsi; dico dixi, duco *quoque* duxi.

Do *fit* di: mando mandi; *sed* scindo scidi *dat.*
Findo fĭdi, fundo fūdi, tundo tŭtŭdi*que,*
Pendo pependi, tendo tetendi; *junge* cado*que*
Quod cĕcĭdi *format; pro verbero* cædo cecīdi:
Cedo *pro discedere, sive locum dare,* cessi:
Vado, rado, lædo, ludo, dīvĭdo, trudo,
Claudo, plaudo, rodo, *ex* do *semper faciunt* si.

Go *fit* xi: jungo junxi: *sed* r *ante* go *vult* si,
Ut spargo sparsi; lego legi, *et* ago *facit* egi:
Dat tango tetigi, pungo punxi pŭpŭgi*que;*
Dat frango fregi, pĕpĭgi *vult* pago *paciscor,*
Pango *etiam* pegi, *sed* panxi *maluit usus.*

Ho *fit* xi: traho *ceu* traxi *docet, et* veho vexi.

Lo *fit* ui: colo *ceu* colui; psallo *excipe cum* p,
Et sallo *sine* p, *nam* li *tibi format utrumque;*
Dat vello velli vulsi *quoque,* fallo fefelli;
Cello *pro frango* cĕcŭli, pello pĕpŭli*que.*

Mo *fit* ui: vomo *ceu* vomui: *sed* ĕmo *facit* ēmi;
Como *petit* compsi, promo prompsi: *adjice* demo
Quod format dempsi, sumo sumpsi; premo pressi.

No *fit* vi: sino *ceu* sivi: temno *excipe* tempsi;
Dat sterno stravi, sperno sprevi, lino levi,
Interdum lini *et* livi, cerno *quoque* crevi:
Gigno, pono, cano; genui, posui, cecini, *dant.*

Po *fit* psi: scalpo scalpsi; rumpo *excipe* rupi,
Et strepo *quod format* strepui, *quæque inde creantur.*

Quo *fit* Qui; linquo liqui: coquo *demĭto* coxi.

Digitized by Google

Ro *fit* VI: sero *ceu pro planto et semino* sevi,
Quod serui *melius semper dabit ordino signans;*
Vult verro verri, *vult* uro ussi, gero gessi,
Quæro quæsivi, tero trivi, curro cucurri.

So, *veluti probat* arcesso, incesso *atque* lacesso,
Formabit SIVI: *sed tolle* capesso capessi
Quodque capessivi *facit, atque* facesso facessi,
Et viso visi; *sed* pinso pinsui *habebit.*

Sco *fit* VI: pasco pavi: *vult* posco poposci,
Vult didici disco, *sic* edisco edidici *dat.*

To *fit* TI: verto verti; *sed* sisto *notetur*
Pro facio stare activum, nam jure stiti *dat;*
Dat mitto misi, peto *vult formare* petivi;
Sterto stertui *habet,* meto messui. *Ab* ECTO *fit* EXI;
Ut flecto flexi; necto *dat* nexui *habetque*
Nexi; *etiam* pecto *dat* pexui, *habet quoque* pexi.

Vo *fit* VI: volvo volvi; vivo *excipe* vixi.

Xo *fit* UI: *monstrat* texo, *quod* texui *habebit.*

Fit CIO CI: facio feci, jacio *quoque* jeci:
Antiquum lacio lexi, specio *quoque* spexi,
Elicio, elicui, *a* lacio *sed cætera* lexi.

Fit DIO DI: fodio fodi. GIO, *ceu* fugio, GI.

Fit PIO PI, capio cepi; cupio *excipe* pivi;
Et rapio rapui, sapio sapui, *atque* sapivi.

Fit RIO RI: pario peperi. TIO SSI, *geminans* S,
Ut quatio quassi, *quod vix reperitur in usu.*

Denique UO *fit* UI: statuo statui; pluo pluvi
Format, sive plui; struo *sed* struxi, fluo fluxi.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Is makes īvi.

Quarta dat IS IVI: *ut monstrat* scio scis *tibi* scivi.

Excipias vĕnio *dans* vēni, *et* vēneo vēnīi:
Raucio rausi, farcio farsi, sarcio sarsi,
Sepio sepsi, sentio sensi, fulcio fulsi,
Haurio *item* hausi, sancio sanxi, vincio vinxi;

Pro salto salio salui, *dabit* ăm͡ĭcio *et* ăm͡ĭcŭi.

Digitized by Google

II. PRETERPERFECT TENSE OF COMPOUND VERBS.

Præteritum dat idem simplex tibi compositumque:
Ut docui edocui *monstrat.* *Sed syllaba, semper*
Quam simplex geminat, composto non geminatur:
Præterquam tribus his, præcurro, excurro, repungo;
Atque a DO, DISCO, STO, POSCO, *rite creatis.*

A PLICO *compositum cum* SUB *vel nomine, ut ista,*
Supplico, multiplico, *gaudet formare* plicavi;
Applico, complico, replico, *et* explico, ui *quoque formant.*
Quamvis vult OLEO *simplex* olui, *tamen inde*
Quodvis compositum melius formabit olevi;
Simplicis at formam redolet *sequitur,* suboletque.

Composita, a PUNGO *formabunt omnia* punxi;
Vult unum pupugi, *interdumque,* repungo repunxi.

Natum a DO, *quando est inflexio tertia, ut* addo,
Credo, ēdo, dedo, reddo, perdo, abdo *vel* obdo,
Condo, indo, trado, prodo, vendo dĭdi: *at unum*
Abscondo abscondi. *Natum a* sto stas, stĭti *habebit.*

COMPOUND VERBS, *which change the first vowel into* E.

Verba hæc simplicia præsentis præteritique,
Si componantur, vocalem primam in E *mutant:*
Damno *ut* condemno, lacto delecto, sacro*que,*
Consecro *dans, et sic,* fallo, arceo, tracto, fatiscor,
Cando *vetus,* capto, jacto, patior, gradior*que,*
Partio, carpo, patro, scando, spargo; pario*que,*
Cujus nata per I *duo,* comperit *et* reperit, *dant;*
Cætera sed per UI, *velut hæc,* aperire, operire.

A pasco pavi *tantum composta notentur*
Hæc duo compesco, dispesco, pescui, *habere;*
Cætera, ut epasco, *servabunt simplicis usum.*

COMPOUND VERBS, *which change the first Vowel into* I.

Hæc habeo, lateo, salio, statuo, cado, lædo,
Et tango, *atque* cano, *sic* quæro, cædo cecīdi,
Sic egeo, teneo, taceo, sapio, rapio*que,*
Si componantur, vocalem primam in I *mutant,*
Ut rapio rapui, eripio eripui: *a* cano *natum*
Præteritum per UI, *ceu* concino concinui, *dat.*

Digitized by Google

A placeo *sic* displiceo; *sed simplicis usum*
Hæc duo, complaceo *cum* perplaceo, *bene servant.*

Composita a verbis calco, salto, A *per* U *mutant;*
Id tibi demonstrant conculco, inculco, resulto.

Composita a claudo, quatio, lavo, *rejiciunt* A:
Id docet a claudo, occludo, excludo; *a* quatio*que,*
Percutio, excutio; *a* lavo, proluo, diluo, *nata.*

COMPOUND VERBS, *which change the first Vowel of the* Present Tense *into* I, *but not the* Preterperfect Tense.

Hæc si componas, ago, emo, sedeo, rego, frango,
Et capio, jacio, lacio, specio, premo, pango,
Vocalem primam præsentis in I *sibi mutant,*
Præteriti nunquam: ceu frango, refringo refregi;
A capio, incipio incēpi; *sed pauca notentur:*
Namque suum simplex perăgo *sequitur,* satăgo*que;*
Atque ab ago, dego *dat* degi, cogo coēgi;
A rego, *sic* pergo perrexi; *vult quoque* surgo
Surrexi: *mediâ præsentis syllabâ ademptâ.*

Composita a pango *retinent* A *quatuor ista:*
Depango, oppango, circumpango, *atque* repango.

Nil variat facio, *nisi præposito præeunte,*
Id docet olfacio, *cum* calfacio, inficio*que.*

A LEGO *nata,* re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad *præeunte,*
Præsentis servant vocalem; in I *cætera mutant;*
De quibus hæc, intel-ligo, diligo, negligo, *tantum*
Præteritum lexi *faciunt; reliqua omnia* legi.

§ 132.—III. SUPINES OF SIMPLE VERBS.

Nunc ex præterito discas formare Supinum.
BI *sibi* TUM *sumit; sic namque* bibi bibitum *fit.*

CI *fit* CTUM: vici victum *testatur, et* ici
Dans ictum, feci factum, jeci *quoque* jactum.

DI *fit* SUM: vidi visum: *quædam geminant* S;
Ut pandi passum, sedi sessum; *adde* scidi *quod*
Dat scissum, *atque* fidi fissum, fodi *quoque* fossum.

Digitized by Google

Sic etiam advertas, quod syllaba prima supinis,
Quam vult præteritum geminari, non geminatur:
Idque totondi *dans* tonsum *docet, atque* cecĭdi
Quod cæsum *et* cecĭdi *quod dat* casum, *atque* tetendi
Quod tensum *et* tentum, tŭtŭdi tunsum, *atque* dedi *quod*
Juré datum *poscit,* morsum *vult atque* momordi.

Gi *fit* ctum: legi lectum; pegi pepigi*que*
Dant pactum, fregi fractum, tetigi *quoque* tactum,
Egi actum, pupugi punctum; fugî fugitum *dat.*

Li *fit* sum: salli, *stans pro sale condio,* salsum;
Dat pepuli pulsum, cĕcŭli culsum, *atque* fefelli
Falsum; *dat* velli vulsum; tuli *habet quoque* latum.

Mi, ni, pi, qui, tum *formant, velut hic manifestum:*
Emi emptum, veni ventum, cĕcĭni *a* cano cantum;
A capio cepi captum: cœpi *quoque* cœptum:
A rumpo rupi ruptum; liqui *quoque* lictum.

Ri *fit* sum: *ut,* verri versum; peperi *excipe* partum.

Si *fit* sum: visi visum; *tamen* s *geminato*
Misi *formabit* missum; fulsi *excipe* fultum,
Hausi haustum, sarsi sartum, farsi *quoque* fartum.
Ussi ustum, gessi gestum: torsi *duo* tortum
Et torsum: indulsi indultum indulsum*que requirit.*

Psi *fit* ptum: scripsi scriptum; sculpsi *quoque* sculptum.

Ti *fit* tum: *a* sto *namque* steti, *a* sisto*que* stiti, *dant*
Ambo rite statum: verti *tamen excipe* versum.

Vi *fit* tum: flavi flatum; pavi *excipe* pastum:
Dat lavi lotum, *interdum* lautum *atque* lavatum;
Potavi potum, *interdum facit et* potatum,
Sed favi fautum, cavi cautum; *a* sero sevi
Formes rite satum, livi lini*que* litum *dant,*
Solvi *a* solvo solutum, volvi *a* volvo volutum;
Vult singultivi singultum, veneo venis
Venivi venum, sepelivi *rite* sepultum.

Quod dat ui *dat* itum: domui domitum; *excipe quodvis*
Verbum in uo, *quia semper* ui *formabit in* utum,
Exui *ut* exutum: *a* ruo *deme* rui ruitum *dans:*
Vult secui sectum enecui enectum, fricui*que*

Digitized by Google

Frictum, miscui *item* mistum, *dat et* ămĭcui **amictum:**
Torrui *habet* tostum, docui doctum, tenui*que*
Tentum, consului consultum, alui altum **alitum***que;*
Sic salui saltum, colui occului *quoque* cultum;
Pinsui *habet* pistum, rapui raptum, serui*que*
A sero *vult* sertum; *sic* texui *habet quoque* **textum.**

Hæc sed UI *mutant in* SUM: *nam* censeo censum,
Cellui *habet* celsum, meto messui *habet quoque* **messum;**
Nexui *item* nexum, *sic* pexui *habet quoque* **pexum.**

XI *fit* CTUM: vinxi vinctum; *quinque abjiciunt* N,
Ut finxi fictum, minxi mictum, *adjice* pinxi
Dans pictum, strinxi strictum, rinxi *quoque* **rictum.**

XUM flexi, plexi, fixi *dant, et* fluo **fluxum.**

IV. SUPINES OF COMPOUND VERBS.

Compositum ut simplex formatur quodque supinum,
Quamvis non eadem stet syllaba semper utrique.
Composita a tunsum, *demptâ* N, tusum; *a* ruitum *fit,*
I *mediâ demptâ,* rŭtum; *et a* saltum *quoque* sultum;
A sero, *quando* satum *format, composta* situm ***dant.***

Hæc captum, factum, jactum, raptum, A *per* E *mutant;*
Et cantum, partum, sparsum, carptum, *quoque* fartum.

Verbum edo *compositum non* estum *sed facit* **esum;**
Unum duntaxat comedo *formabit utrumque.*

A nosco *tantum duo* cognĭtum *et* agnĭtum *habentur;*
Cætera dant nōtum: *nullo est jam* noscitum *in usu.*

---

§ 133.—V. PRETERPERFECT TENSE OF VERBS IN *OR.*

Verba in OR *admittunt ex posteriore supino*
Præteritum, verso U *per* US, *et* SUM *consociato*
Vel fui; *ut a* lectu, lectus sum *vel* fui. *At horum*
Nunc est deponens, nunc est commune notandum.
Nam labor lapsus; patior *dat* passus *et ejus*
Nata; ut compatior compassus, perpetior*que*
Formans perpessus; fateor *dat* fassus, *et inde*
Nata; ut, confiteor confessus, diffiteor*que*

Digitized by Google

Formans diffessus ; gradior *dat* gressus, *et inde*
Nata ; ut digredior digressus : *junge* fatiscor
Fessus sum, mensus sum metior, utor *et* usus.

Pro texo ordĭtus, *pro incepto dat* ordior orsus,
Nitor nisus *vel* nixus sum, ulciscor *et* ultus ;
Irascor *simul* iratus, reor *atque* ratus sum ;
Obliviscor *vult* oblitus sum, fruor *optat*
Fructus, *tum demĭm* misereri *junge* misertus.

Vult tuor *et* tueor *non* tutus *sed* tuitus sum :
A loquor *adde* locutus, *et a* sequor *adde* secutus.

Experior *facit* expertus ; *formare* paciscor
Gaudet pactus sum, nanciscor nactus ; apiscor,
Quod vetus est verbum, aptus sum, *unde* adipiscor adeptus.

Junge queror questus, proficiscor *junge* profectus,
Expergiscor sum experrectus ; *et hæc quoque* commĭniscor commentus, nascor natus, moriorque
Mortuus, *atque* orior *quod præteritum facit* ortus.

VI. VERBS WHICH MAKE THE PRETERPERFECT TENSE BOTH IN THE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES.

Præteritum activæ et passivæ vocis habent hæc :
Cœno cœnavi *et* cœnatus sum *tibi format*,
Juro juravi *et* juratus, potoque potavi
Et potus, titubo titubavi *vel* titubatus.

Prandeo prandi *et* pransus sum, placeo placui *dat*
Et placitus, suesco *dat* suevi *vult quoque* suetus.

Nubo nupsi nuptaque sum, mereor meritus sum
Vel merui ; *adde* libet libuit libitum, *et* licet *adde*
Quod licuit licitum, tædet *quod* tæduit *et dat*
Pertæsum ; *adde* pudet *faciens* puduit puditumque,
Atque piget, *tibi quod format* piguit pigitumque.

VII. OF THE PRETERPERFECT TENSE OF NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS.

Neutro-passivum sic præteritum tibi format :

Gaudeo gavisus sum, fido fisus, *et* audeo
Ausus sum, fio factus, soleo solĭtus sum.

Digitized by Google

VERBS *which want the* Preterperfect Tense.

Præteritum fugiunt vergo, ambigo, glisco, fatisco,
Polleo, nideo; *tum* ferio, furo; *tum* puerasco;
Omniaque inceptiva et quæ caruere supinis;
Ut metuor, timeor: *meditativa omnia, præter*
Partŭrio, esurio, *quæ præteritum duo servant.*

VERBS *which seldom admit a* Supine.

Hæc raro aut nunquam retinebunt verba supinum:
Lambo, mico micui, rudo; *tum* scabo, parco peperci,
Dispesco, posco, disco, compesco, quinisco,
Dego, ango, sugo, lingo, ningo; satago*que*,
Psallo, volo, nolo, malo, tremo, strideo, strido,
Flaveo, liveo, avet, paveo, conniveo, fervet.

A nuo *compositum, ut* renuo: *a* cado, *ut* accĭdo, *præter*
Occĭdo, *quod facit* occasum, recĭdo*que* recasum:
Respuo, linquo, luo, metuo, cluo, frigeo, calveo,
Et sterto, timeo: *sic* luceo, *et* arceo, *cujus*
Composita ercĭtum *habent: sic a* gruo, *ut* ingruo, *nata;*
Et quæcunque in UI *formantur neutra secundæ;*
Excipias oleo, doleo, placeo, taceo*que*,
Pāreo, *item* careo, noceo, jaceo, lateo*que*,
Et valeo, caleo; *gaudent hæc namque supino.*

Digitized by Google

ACCIDENCE CONSTRUED.

§ 2. VÆ tibi ridenti *wo to you laughing*, quia mox *because soon* post gaudia *after joys* flebis *you will weep*.

§ 10. Adulter *an adulterer* dat *gives* adulteri, in genitivo singulari *in the genitive singular*. Sic *thus*, puer *boy*, vesper *evening*, gener *son-in-law*, socer *father-in-law*, asper *rough*, miser *miserable*, tener *tender*, lacer *lacerated;* sic *so*, prosper *prosperous*, liber *wine* and *free;* sic *so*, presbyter *priest*; compostaque *and* (*words*) *compounded* duobus verbis *with the two verbs* gero *and* fero, ut *as*, armiger *knight*, dant *give* ĕri (*and*) ĕro (*in the genitive and dative cases singular*).

§ 11. Scilicet *truly* mortalem *a mortal* egregii altique silentî *of wonderful and deep silence.*

§ 12. Gen. Letum *the death* Andrŏgĕō *of Androgeos* in foribus *on the doors.*

Gen. Mutaverat *he had changed* artus *the limbs* Terei *of Tereus.* Tectaque *and the roof* Penthĕī *of Pentheus.*

Dat. Calliopëa *Calliopea* Orphei *to Orpheus.* Theseo promiserat *he had promised to Theseus.* Qualis adest concordia *such a concord as is present* Thetidi *to Thetis*, qualis *such as* Peleo *to Peleus.*

Acc. Ælĭnŏn in sylvis *Ælinon in the woods.* Troïlŏn *Troilus.* Pittăcŏn *Pittacus.* Typhoea *Typhoeus.* Orphea *Orpheus.*

Voc. Quo loco *in what state* (*is*) summa res *the highest affair* (i. e. *our country's cause*), Panthū *o Panthous?*

Abl. Blandius *more bland* Threïcio Orphĕō *than Threician Orpheus.*

§ 16. (*The following words*) habent *have* im in accusativo *in the accusative case:* Vis *force*, ravis *hoarseness*, pelvis *basin*, sitis *thirst*, tussis *cough*, sinapis *mustard*, cucumis *cucumber*, amussis (*carpenter's*) *rule*, præsepis *manger*, cannabis *hemp*, securis *axe*, Charybdis *Charybdis*, tigris *tiger*, atque *and* buris *plough-tail*, et omnes fluvii in is *and all rivers* (*ending*) *in* is: ut *as*, Albis *the Elbe*, Tibris *the Tiber*, Thamesis *the Thames.*

Digitized by Google

Sed *but* restis *rope*, puppis *poop*, turris *tower*, navis *ship*, strigilis *strigil*, sementis *sowing*, clavis *key*, adjunge *add* (*to these*) febris *fever* et aqualis *and ewer*, hæc *these* dant *give* em vel im, *either* em *or* im (*in the accusative*), utrum malis *whichever you may prefer*.

Obs. 3. In ablativo singulari *in the ablative singular* (*the following*) malunt *choose* formari *to be formed* in i quam e *in* i *rather than* e: appellativa *appellatives* (*as*) Atheniensis *Athenian;* et adjectiva *and adjectives*, quisque mensis in is *and every month* (*which ends*) *in* is, (*as*) Aprilis *April;* (*and in*) ober (*and*) ember, ut hi *as these*, October *October*, et November *and November;* et quæ dant im accusativo *and those which give* im *in the accusative* hæc dabunt i in ablativo *these will give* i *in the ablative case*.

Obs. 4. Avis *the bird* divina *prophetic* imbrium imminentum *of the impending showers.* Quot *as many as* dabant i ablativo *did give* i *in the ablative* dant ium plurali genitivo *give* ium *in the genitive plural;* et finita s et x *and words ended by* s *and* x, tantùm *only* consonante *with a consonant* eunte ante *going before:* plerumque *and generally* monosyllaba dant ium *monosyllables give* ium, parisyllaba *words of equal number of syllables* (*in all their cases*) ferè ium *commonly* (*give*) ium. Sed quædam sunt excipienda *but some are to be excepted*, committendaque memoriæ *and to be committed to memory*.

Um (*these give*) um, vates *poet*, senex *old man*, pater *father*, panis *bread*, accipiter *hawk*, canis *dog*, frater *brother*, mater *mother*, juvenis *youth*, apis *bee*, volucris *bird*, crux *cross*, dux *leader*, nux *nut*, Thrax *Thracian*, fax *torch*, grex *herd*, gryps *griffin*, Phryx *Phrygian*, vox *voice*, lynx *lynx*, rex *king*, lex *law*, fur *thief*, ren *kidney*, splen, *spleen*, fraus *fraud*, laus *praise*, mos *manner*, crus *leg*, grus *crane*, sus *swine*, præs *surety*, pes *foot*, flos *flower*.

§ 18. *Obs.* 2. Ostendere *to shew* sese *themselves* mortali cœtu *to mortal crowd.* Prætenta *stretched before* Sicanio sinu *the Sicilian bay*.

Parce metu *spare your fear*, Cytherea *o Venus.* Quæ gratia *what delight* currûm *of chariots* (*there was*).

Obs. 3. (*The following make the dative plural*) in ubus non ibus *in* ubus *not in* ibus: quercus *oak*, ficus *fig*, acus *needle*, arcus *bow*, verus *spit*, lacus *lake*, specus *cave*, tribus *tribe*, artus *limb*, portus *haven*, pecus *flock*, partus *bringing forth*.

Obs. 4. Sperne *spurn* (*the endings*) me, mu, mi, mis, si *if* vis *you wish* declinare *to decline* domus *house*.

§ 19. *Obs.* 2. Ubi *when* Libra fecerit *Libra shall have made* horas *the hours* die *of the day* somnique *and of sleep* pares *equal.* Juvenem *a youth* constantis fide *of constant faith*.

§ 24. *Obs.* 3. In ablativo singulari *in the ablative singular* hæc

Digitized by Google

these words malunt formari *choose to be formed* in e quam i *in* e *rather than* i: pauper *poor*, puber *adult*, hospes *host or guest*, compos *in possession* (*of his senses*), superstes *survivor*, senex *old man*, sospes *safe*, impos *powerless*, compostaque cum *and* (*those*) *compounded with* corpus *body* (*and*) pes *foot*; bicorpor *double-bodied*, bipes *double-footed*, multipes *many-footed*.

§ 26. *Obs.* 1. Jactantior Ancus *Ancus, too boastful.* Sum paullo infirmior *I am rather infirm.*

Obs. 2. Purissima mella *very pure honey*; Justissima tellus *very just earth*; Optimus Virgilius *very excellent Virgil.*

§ 30. *Obs.* 1. Sæpe *often* videas *you may see* quaternos *sets of four persons* cœnare *dine* tribus lectis *on three couches* (i. e. *four on each couch*). Hic *he* exsecat *extorts* quinas mercedes *five per cent.* (*monthly*) capiti *on the principal.*

Obs. 3. Sol aureus *the golden sun* regit *rules* per duodena astra *through twelve stars* (*signs of zodiac*) cœli *of heaven.*

Obs. 6. Vafer *crafty* tentat *he tries* mille modis *in a thousand ways.*

Ille *he* ibat *was going* cum multis millibus *with many thousands* armatorum *of armed men.* Tua area *thy threshing-floor* triverit *may have threshed* millia centum *a hundred thousands* (*of measures*) frumenti *of wheat.* Scribit *he writes* esse sibi *that there are to himself* millia quinque *five thousands* chlamydum *of cloaks* domi *at home.* Mille cadis *a thousand casks* Chii *of Chian wine* veterisque Falerni *and of old Falernian* positis intus *having been placed within*, nihil est, *this is nothing*, tercentum millibus *three hundred thousands* (*of them*), potet *he should drink* acre acetum *sour vinegar.*

§ 35. Scipiades *Scipio* vicit *conquered* Pœnos *the Carthaginians* et proprios amores *and his own passions*; vicit eos *he conquered them* (*the Carthaginians*); sed *but* se vincere *to conquer himself* majus erat *was a greater* (*deed*).

§ 40. Qui gurges *what whirlpool*, aut quæ flumina *or what rivers* ignara *are ignorant* lugubris belli *of lugubrious war?* Quod mare *what sea* non Dauniæ cædes decoloravere *have not the Daunian* (*Italian*) *slaughters discoloured?* Quæ ora *what shore* caret *is without* nostro cruore *our blood?*

§ 41. Quicquid *whatsoever* reges delirant *the kings rave*, Achivi plectuntur *the Greeks rue.* Aude aliquid *dare something* dignum brevibus Gyaris *worthy the narrow Gyari* et carcere *and a prison*, si vis esse aliquis *if you wish to be somebody.* Non recito cuiquam *I recite to nobody*, nisi amicis *but my friends*; idque coactus *and that when I am compelled*; non ubivis *not in any place you choose*, coramve quibuslibet *or in the presence of any one you like.* An quidquam sit *should any thing be* majus nobis *greater to us* tanto

Digitized by Google

munere *than so great a reward?* Quidam *a certain person* occurrit *meets me* notus mihi *known to me* tantum *only* nomine *by name.* Sævus *cruel* fingere *to forge* quælibet opprobria *any sort of calumny* in quemvis *against any one you choose.* Non contingit cuivis homini *it does not fall to the lot of any one you choose* adire Corinthum *to reach Corinth.* Ut ætas est cuique *according as his age is to each,* ita *so* facetus *courteous* adopta quemque *adopt each.* Quisque *every one* metet *will reap* semina jacta vitæ suæ *the seed of his own life which he has sown.* Quælibet herba *every herb* (*you see*) monstrat *shows* præsentem Deum *God present.* Est aliquid *it is something* (*for a man*) fecisse *to have made himself* dominum *the lord* unius lacertæ *of a single lizard* quocunque loco *in whatever place it may be,* quocunque recessu *in whatever nook.* Quidam *a certain person* ait *says* 'est aliquid *it is something* ire *to go,* non quavis *not by any road that any body likes;*' neque errat quisquam *and no one is wrong,* quæquæ sequens optima *if he follows every thing that is best* quicquid agit (*in*) *whatever he does.*

§ 42. *Obs.* 1. Quisquis *whosoever* studet æmulari Pindarum *studies to emulate Pindar.* Ne *lest* quicunque Deus *whatsoever God,* quicunque heros *whatsoever hero* adhibebitur *shall be employed.*

Obs. 2. Quem dierum cunque *what* (*kind*) *of days soever* fors dabit *chance shall give,* appone lucro *set it down for gain.*

Obs. 3. Non quisquam *not any one* isthic *in that place of yours* limat obliquo oculo *looks askance at* mea commoda *my comforts.* Nec deditus *not given* citharæ *to the harp* nec musæ ulli *nor to any muse.*

Obs. 4. Sis memor *be mindful,* quivis, et *and* quilibet, includunt omnes *include all;* sed contra *but on the other hand,* quisquam, et *and* ullus, excludunt omnes *exclude all.*

§ 44. Equidem *I for my part* nil tale verebar de te *had no such fear of you.* Equidem *I indeed* vidi *have seen* multos *many* serentes *when sowing* medicare semina *medicate the seed.*

§ 46. Otia damnantur *leisure is condemned* quæ nulla negotia tractant *which does no work.*

§ 47. Putes *you may think* Garganum nemus *that the Garganian wood* mugire *is roaring,* aut *or* mare Tuscum *the Tuscan sea.* Eloquar *should I speak,* an sileam *or should I hold my peace?* Mortalia facta peribunt *mortal deeds will perish,* nedum (ne dicam) *not to say that* (i. e. *much less*), honos et gratia sermonum *can the honour and beauty of language* stet *stand* vivax *long-lived.* Hoc *this* Ithacus *the Ithacan* (*Ulysses*) velit *would wish,* et Atridæ *and the sons of Atreus* mercentur *would buy* magno *at a great price.* Quid faceret *what should he do?* Quo se ferret

Digitized by Google

whither should he bear himself, conjuge *his wife* bis raptâ *having been twice snatched away?* Quo fletu *with what weeping* moveret *should he move* Manes *the Manes*, quâ voce *with what voice* (*move*) Numina *the Deities?* Proh pudor! *for shame!* et advena illuserit *and shall a stranger have mocked* nostris regnis *our realms!* Sis felix *may you be propitious!* levesque *and may you lighten* nostrum laborem *our labour*, quæcunque *whoever* (*you are*)!

§ 48. Irruerant Danai *the Greeks had rushed in;* et tectum omne tenebant *and were occupying the whole house.* Ut sementem feceris *as you have sown*, ita metes *so you will reap.*

§ 52. *Obs.* 1. Paterfamilias surgat *let the father of the family rise* cubitu primus *from bed first*, postremus cubitum eat *go to bed last.*

§ 54. *Obs.* 5. Injuria *injury* interdum *sometimes* utilis est *is useful* ipsis passis *to those themselves who have suffered it.*

Obs. 6. Licet usque eamus *we may still go on* cantantes *singing*, minus via lædit *the road* (*thus*) *tires less.* Plura locuturi *when about to say more*, subito deducimur imbre *we are severed by the sudden rain.* Aristides pulsus patriâ *Aristides when banished from his country*, Lacedæmona fugit *fled to Lacedæmon.* Mandârat furtim *he had committed him secretly* Threicio regi *to the Thracian king*, alendum *to be reared.*

§ 56. *Obs.* 3. Fuge *avoid* quærere *to inquire* quid sit futurum *what may be about to be* cras *to-morrow.*

§ 64. *Obs.* 7. Musæ *the Muses* locuturæ fuissent *would have been about to speak* Plautino sermone *in the language of Plautus* si Latinè loqui vellent *if they wished to speak Latin.*

Obs. 10. Sunto *let there be* bini censores *two censors* (*for each year*). Transnanto ter *let them thrice swim across* Tiberim *the Tiber*, uncti *anointed*, quibus est opus *to whom there is want* somno alto *of sound sleep.* Laudato *praise thou* ingentia rura *great farms*, colito *till thou* exiguum *a little one.*

§ 70. *Obs.* 4. Spargier agno *to be sprinkled with a lamb.* Dicier *to be said*, hic est *this is he.*

Obs. 9. Quæ finis *what is the end* standi *of standing?* nos *we* ducimus *pass* (*waste*) horas *the hours* flendo *in weeping.* Nate Deâ *o born from a goddess*, omnis fortuna *all fortune* superanda est *is to be conquered* ferendo *by bearing it.* Putandum est *it must be thought* animas *that souls* ire *go* sublimes *aloft* ad cœlum *to heaven* hinc *hence.* Parcendum *it must be spared* (*you must spare*) teneris *them tender;* et *and* dum *while* palmes *the tendril of the vine* agit se *shoots itself* ad auras *into the air* lætus *luxuriant*, immissus *flowing* per purum *through the pure* (*sky*) laxis habenis *with loose reins* (*shoots*), ipsa *itself* acie nondum tentanda *is*

Digitized by Google

not yet to be tried with the edge falcis *of the pruning-knife*, sed *but* frondes *the leaves* carpendæ (*are*) *to be culled* manibus *with the hands* uncis *curved*, legendæque *and to be plucked* inter *betwixt and between.* Sepes *hedges* etiam *too* texendæ (*are*) *to be woven* et *and* pecus omne *all cattle* tenendum *to be restrained.* Tellus *the earth* tamen *yet* sollicitanda (*is*) *to be stirred* pulvisque *and the dust* movendus *to be moved*, et *and* Jupiter (*Jupiter*) (*the sky*) metuendus *to be feared* uvis *for the grapes* jam maturis *now ripe.*

Obs. 10. Missi sunt *they were sent* speculatum *to reconnoitre* arcem *the citadel.*

§ 75. *Obs.* 2. Ait *he says* nil *that nothing* esse *is* prius *preferable to*, nil *nothing* melius *better* cælibe vitâ *than a single life.* "Nil *nothing* satis est *is enough*," inquit *says he*, "quia *because* sis *you are* tanti (*esteemed*) *at so much* quantum habeas *as you have.*"

§ 82. *Obs.* 1. Plus valet *he avails more* qui magis arte agit quàm vi *who acts with art rather than force*, quàm qui vi agit magis quàm arte *than he who acts with force rather than art.*

§ 83. Auditis *hear ye?* An *or* amabilis insania (*does*) *a pleasing phrenzy* ludit *delude* me *me?*

Novistine *do you know* locum *a place* potiorem *better* rure beato *than the happy country?*

Nonne vides *do you not see* ut *how* Tmolus mittit *Tmolus sends* croceos odores *its saffron odours*, India *India* (*sends*) ebur *ivory*, molles Sabæi *the soft Sabæans* (*send*) sua thura *their frankincense?*

Num *whether* honor idem *the same beauty* adest *is present* cocto *to it cooked?* Num *whether* (*could they*) occumbere *die* Sigeis campis *on the Sigean plains*, num *whether* capti *being taken* potuere *could they* capi *be kept prisoners?* num *or hath* Troja incensa *Troy in flames* cremavit *consumed* viros *the men?*

Quin exercemus *why do we not exercise* (*ratify*) potiùs *rather* pacem æternam *eternal peace* inter nos *among ourselves* pactosque hymeneos *and plighted nuptials?*

Ut valet *how fares he?* ut meminit nostri *how does he remember us?*

An memorem *should I mention* mare *the sea* quod *which* alluit *bathes* (*Italy*) suprà *above*, quodque *and that which* (*bathes it*) infrà *below?* Anne *or* (*should I mention*) lacus tantos *so great lakes?*

Furor ne cœcus *does blind madness* an *or* vis acrior *more eager violence* rapit *hurry on?* Fertis ne huc *Do ye bear hither* pacem *peace?* an *or* arma *arms?*

Dubito *I am in doubt* memorem *whether I should mention* Romulum *Romulus* post hos *after these*, an *or* quietum regnum *the quiet reign* Pompilî *of Pompilius* (*Numa*), an *or* superbos fasces *the proud fasces* (*rods with axes*) Tarquinî *of Tarquinius*, an *or* nobile lethum *the noble death* Catonis *of Cato.* Quid enim *for*

Digitized by Google

what ambigitur *is questioned?* (*whether*) Castor an *or* Docilis (*names of gladiators*) sciat plus *has the more skill.*

Multùm intererit *there will be a wide difference* Davusne *whether Davus* loquatur *speak*, an *or* heros *a hero;* maturusne senex *whether a mature old man*, an *or* (*a person*) fervidus *warm* juventâ *with youth* adhuc florente *yet blooming;* et *and* (*there will be a wide difference whether*) matrona potens *a potent matron* (*speak*), an *or* sedula nutrix *a busy nurse.*

Ipse *he himself* (*knows not*) quis sit *who he is*, utrum sit *whether he is at all*, an non sit *or is not*, id quoque *that too* nescit *he knows not.*

Quid refert *what signifies it* utrum *whether* Mutius *Mutius* ignoscat *pardon* dictis *the words* an non *or not?*

Puellæ *maidens* nescivêre hyemem *have been* (*are usually*) *ignorant of the* (*coming*) *storm* carpentes *plying* ne nocturna quidem *not even nightly* pensa *tasks* (*in wool*). Licet *it is allowed* lædere amicum *to hurt a friend* ne joco quidem *not even in sport.* Ne Hercules quidem contra duos *not even Hercules is a match for two.*

Haud male *by no means ill*, Telemachus, proles *the offspring* patientis Ulyssei *of patient Ulysses* (*said*), Ithacæ locus *the country of Ithaca* non es aptus *is not suited* equis *for horses.* Haud ignara *by no means ignorant* ac *and* non incauta *not incautious* futuri *of the future.*

Sustinere non potuerunt vim tribunitiam *they could not support the tribunitian power*, nedum his temporibus *much less in these times.*

Dolere *to be in pain* philosophi *the philosophers* affirmant *affirm is* non modo summum malum *not only not the greatest evil*, sed ne malum quidem *but not even an evil at all.* Non modo cogimur *not only are we not compelled to do* quod non possumus *what we cannot*, sed ne quantum quidem possumus *but not even as much as we can.*

§ 85. Et sapit *he both is wise* et mecum facit *and makes* (*agrees*) *with me* et judicat *and judges* Jove æquo *with just Jupiter.*

Et *and* dedit *gave* septem annos *seven years* studiis *to studies*, insenuitque *and grew old.*

Tribulaque *both harrows*, traheæque *and drags*, et *and* rastri *rakes* iniquo pondere *with galling weight.*

§ 86. Aut (*the conjunction*) *aut* jungit *joins* diversa sibi *things different from each other*, et contraria *and things contrary to each other* sensu *in sense;* Vel *vel* emendat *corrects* dicta *what has been said*, vel *or* gaudet *rejoices* addere *to add* (*something*) dictis *to what has been said;* Sive et Seu *sive and seu* (*rejoice*) supponere *to suppose* similes casus *similar cases* rerum *of things;* Neve et Neu *neve and neu* prohibent *prohibit;* Aut *aut* vertitur *is changed* in Ve

Digitized by Google

into ve poetis *by the poets.* Omnia quæ *all which things* Flaccus *Flaccus* (*Horace*) demonstrat *shews* lyrico carmine *in a lyric ode*:—

Quem virum *what man* aut heroa *or hero*, Clio *o Clio*, sumes *will you take* celebrare *to celebrate* lyrâ *on the lyre* vel *or* acri tibiâ *on the shrill flute?* Aut *either* in umbrosis oris *on the shady banks* Heliconis *of Helicon* (*in Bœotia*), aut *or* super Pindo *on Pindus* (*in Thessaly*), gelidove in Hæmo *or cold Hæmus* (*in Thrace*).—Ille *he* seu *whether* egerit *he may have driven to flight* Parthos *Parthians* imminentes *hanging over* Latio *Latium* domitos *tamed* justo triumpho *in a full triumph*, sive *or* Seras *the Seres* (*Chinese*) subjectos *lying under* oris *the shores* Orientis *of the East* et *and* Indos *the Indians* — Neve *and let not* ocyor aura *a quicker* (*too quick*) *gale* tollat *carry away* te *thee* iniquum *hostile* nostris vitiis *to our vices* — Neu *nor* sinas *do thou suffer* Medos *the Medes* equitare *to ride* inultos *unpunished*, te duce *you being our general*, Cæsar *o Cæsar!* — Poetæ *poets* volunt *wish* aut prodesse aut delectare *either to profit or to please.* Aut famam sequere *either follow history*, aut sibi convenientia finge *or invent what is coherent.* O Laertiade *o son of Laertes*, quicquid dicam *whatever I shall say* aut erit aut non *will either come to pass or not.* — Vel duo vel nemo *two or nobody;* vel clam vel cum scrobe *secretly or with a ditch.*

Digitized by Google

PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS,

OR

THE GENDERS OF NOUNS, CONSTRUED.

V. 1.

PROPRIA *proper names* quæ *which* tribuntur *are assigned* maribus *to the male kind* dicas *you may call* mascula *masculines;* ut *as* sunt *are* Divorum (*the names*) *of the heathen gods;* Mars *the god of war;* Bacchus *the god of wine;* Apollo *the god of wisdom;* Virorum (*the names*) *of men;* ut *as,* Cato *Cato a noble Roman,* Virgilius *the poet Virgil:* Fluviorum (*the names*) *of rivers;* ut *as,* Tibris *the Tiber* (*at Rome*), Orontes *Orontes* (*a river near Antioch, in Syria*): Mensium (*the names*) *of months;* ut *as,* October *the month October:* Ventorum (*the names*) *of winds;* ut *as,* Libs, *the south-west wind,* Notus, *the south wind,* Auster, *the south wind:* Montium (*the names*) *of mountains;* ut *as,* Othrys *Othrys* (*a mount in Thessaly*), Eryx *Eryx* (*in Sicily*)—Ætna *let Ætna* (*in Sicily*) excipiatur *be excepted,* et Œta *and Œta* (*in Thessaly*), Cyllene *a mount in Arcadia,* Rhodope *in Thrace,* Calpe *Gibraltar;* et *and* Alpes *let the Alps* excipiantur *be excepted,* quæ *which* sunt *are* fœmineæ *feminines;* neutrum Soracte *let the neuter Mt. Soracte* (*St. Oreste, near Rome*) notetur *be noted.*

V. 8.

PROPRIA nomina *proper names* referentia *denoting* fœmineum sexum *the female sex* tribuuntur *are given* fœmineo generi *to the feminine gender,* sive *whether* sint *they be* Dearum (*the names*) *of goddesses;* ut *as,* Juno *Jupiter's wife,* Venus *the goddess of beauty:* Muliebria (*the names*) *of women;* ut *as,* Anna *Anne,* Philotis *Philotis:* Urbium (*the names*) *of cities;* ut *as,* Elis *a city of Peloponnesus,* Opus *a city of Locris;* Regionum (*the names*) *of countries;* ut *as,* Græcia *Greece,* Persis *Persia:* item *also* nomen *the name* insulæ *of an island;* ceu *as,* Creta *Crete* (*Candia*), Britannia *Britain,* Cyprus *Cyprus.*

Tamen *but* quædam *some names* urbium *of cities* sunt *are* excipienda *to be excepted;* ut *as,* ista mascula *these masculines;* Sulmo *Sermione, in Italy,* Agragas *Agrigentum* (*now Girgenti*), *in Sicily:* quædam neutralia *some neuters;* ut *as,* Argos *Argos, in Peloponnesus,* Tibur *Tibur* (*now Tivŏli*), *in Italy,* Præneste *now Palestrina, in Italy:* et *also* Anxur *Anxur* (*now Terracina*), *in Italy,* quod *which* dat *gives* utrumque genus *both genders.*

Digitized by Google

V. 16.

Fœminei generis *of the feminine gender* erunt *will be* Plantæ *plants* Gemmæque *and precious stones* Latinè *in Latin;* ut *as,* myrtus *myrtle,* sapphirus *a sapphire;* et *and* vulgò *commonly* nomina appellativa *the names* Arborum *of trees* erunt *will be* muliebria *feminines;* ut *as,* alnus *an alder-tree,* cupressus *a cypress-tree,* cedrus *a cedar-tree.* Spinus *a sloe-tree* mas *is masculine,* oleaster *a wild olive-tree* mas *is masculine,* carduus *a thistle,* helleborus *hellebore,* calamus *a reed,* rubus *a briar,* asphodĕlusque *and asphodel,* asparagus, narcissus, amaracus, et *and* acanthus est mas *is masculine.* Sunt *these nouns are* et *also* neutra *of the neuter gender,* siler *a withy-tree,* suber *a cork-tree,* thus *a frankincense-tree,* robur *an oak,* que *and* acer *a maple-tree.*

V. 23.

Etiam *also* volucrum (*the names*) *of birds;* ceu *as,* passer *a sparrow,* hirundo *a swallow:* Ferarum *of wild beasts;* ut *as,* tigris *a tiger,* vulpes *a fox:* et *and* Piscium (*the names*) *of fishes;* ut *as,* ostrea *an oyster,* cetus *a whale,* sunt *are* dicta *called* epicœna *nouns of the epicene gender;* quibus, *to which* vox ipsa *the termination itself* feret *will give* genus aptum *the right gender.*

V. 26.

Attamen *but* notandum *it is to be observed* ex cunctis *of all the nouns* suprà *above mentioned* que *and* reliquis *of those that follow,* omne *that every noun* quod *which* exit in um *ends in* um, seu *whether* Græcum *it be Greek* sive *or* Latinum *Latin,* esse *is* genus neutrum *of the neuter gender;* sic *also* nomen *a noun* invariabile *undeclinable;* ut *as,* cornu *horn* atque *and* genu *knee,* Tempe *Tempe* (*a pleasant vale in Thessaly*), fas *law,* nil, nihil *nothing,* instar *like.*

V. 30.

Nomen *a noun* non crescens *not increasing* genitivo *in the genitive case;* ceu *as,* caro carnis *flesh,* capra capræ *a she goat,* nubes nubis *a cloud,* est *is* genus muliebre *the feminine gender.*

V. 32.

Nomina multa *many nouns* virorum *denoting the offices of men* in a *ending in* a dicuntur *are called* mascula *masculines;* ut *as,* scriba *a scribe,* assecla *a page,* scurra *a buffoon,* et *and* sic *thus* lixa *a sutler,* lanista *a master of gladiators.*

Quot *as many nouns as* declinatio prima *the first declension* Græcorum *of the Greeks* fundit in as *supplies in* as et in es *and in* es; et *and* quot *as many Latin nouns as* fiunt *are derived* ab illis *from them* per a *ending in* a, mascula *are masculines;* ut *as,* satrapas, satrapa *a Persian nobleman;* athletes, athleta *a wrestler.* Item *also* leguntur *these are read* mascula *of the masculine gender,* verres *a boar pig,* natalis *a birth-day,* aqualis *an ewer.*

Nata *nouns compounded* ab asse *of* as *a Roman penny or pound*

Digitized by Google

weight; ut *as*, centussis *a hundred asses;* conjunge *join to these* lienis *the spleen*, et *and* orbis *an orb*, callis *a path*, caulis *a stalk*, follis *bellows*, collis *a hill*, mensis *a month*, et *and* ensis *a sword*, fustis *a club*, funis *a rope*, cenchris *a spotted serpent*, panis *bread*, crinis *hair*, et *and* ignis *fire*, cassis *a toil or net*, fascis *a faggot*, torris *a fire-brand*, sentis *a thorn*, piscis *a fish*, et *and* unguis *a nail or talon*, et *also* vermis *a worm*, vectis *a lever*, postis *a door-post;* sic *so* axis *an axle-tree*, et *and* amnis *a river*.

In er *nouns ending in* er, ceu *as*, venter *the belly;* in os vel us *nouns ending in* os *or* us, ut *as*, logos *a word*, annus *a year*, mascula *are masculines*.

At *but* sunt *these nouns are* fœminei generis *of the feminine gender*, mater *a mother*, humus *the ground*, domus *a house*, alvus *a paunch*, et *and* colus *a distaff*, et *also* ficus, quartæ *of the fourth declension*, pro *for* fructu *a fig*, que *and* acus *a needle*, porticus *an arcade*, atque *and* tribus *a tribe*, socrus *a mother-in-law*, nurus *a daughter-in-law*, et *and* manus *a hand*, idus *the ides of a month;* huc *to these* anus *an old woman* addenda est *is to be added*, huc *to these* mystica vannus *the mystical fan* Iacchi *of Bacchus*.

Jungas *you may also join* his *to these* Græca *Greek nouns* vertentia os in us *changing* os *into* us: papyrus *paper*, antidotus *an antidote*, costus *the herb zedoary*, diametrus *a diameter*, byssus *fine flax*, abyssus *a bottomless pit*, diphthongus *a diphthong*, synodus *an assembly*, methodus *a method*, dialectus *a dialect*, et *and* arctus *a set of stars called the Bear*, cum *with* multis aliis *many other nouns*, quæ *which* nunc *at this time* perscribere *to write at large* longum est *is tedious*.

V. 52.

Nomen *a noun* in e *ending in* e, si *if* gignit is *it makes* is *in the genitive case*, est neutrum *is neuter;* ut *as*, mare *the sea*, rete *a net:* et *and* adde *add* quot *whatever nouns* in on *ending in* on, crescentia in i *which make* i *in the genitive case;* ceu *as*, barbiton *a harp or lute*. Adde *add* his *to these*, virus *poison*, pelagus, *the sea;* vulgus *the common people* modo *sometimes* neutrum *is neuter*, modo *sometimes* mas *is masculine*. Adde *add* chaos *chaos*, melos *melody*, a Græcis *from Greek words;* sic *so*, cetos *a whale*, eposque *and an epic poem*.

V. 56.

Sunt *these nouns are* incerti generis *of the doubtful gender*, talpa *a mole*, et *and* dama *a deer*, canalis *a channel*, et *and* cytisus *hadder*, balanus *the fruit of the palm-tree*, clunis, *a buttock*, que *and* finis *an end or limit*, que *and* penus *all provisions*, pampinus *a vine-leaf*, et *and* corbis *a basket*, linter *a bark*, torquis *a chain*, specus *a cave*, anguis *a snake;* ficus, dans *making* fici *in the genitive case*, pro morbo *for a disease*, atque *and* phaselus *a pinnace*, lecythus *an oil-cruse*, atque *and* atomus *an atom*, grossus *a green fig*, pharus *a watch-tower*, et *and* paradisus *paradise*.

Digitized by Google

V. 61

COMPOSITUM *a noun compounded* a verbo *of a verb* dans a *ending in* a est *is* commune duorum *the common of two genders;* Grajugĕna *a Grecian born*, a *from* gigno *to beget;* agricola *a farmer*, a *from* colo *to till;* advena *a stranger*, a *from* venio *to come*, monstrant *show* id *that.*

Adde *add* senex *an old man or woman*, auriga *a charioteer*, et *and* verna *a slave by birth*, sodalis *a companion*, vates *a prophet*, extorris *a banished man or woman*, patruelis *a cousin-german*, que *and* perduellis *an open enemy in war*, affinis *one allied by marriage*, juvenis *a young person*, testis *a witness*, civis *a citizen*, canis *a dog or bitch*, hostis *an enemy.*

V. 66.

NOMEN *a noun* est *is* genus muliebre *of the feminine gender* si *if* penultima syllaba *the last syllable but one* genitivi *of the genitive case* crescentis *increasing* sonat *sounds* longa *long*, velut *as* hæc *these nouns*, pietas pietatis *piety*, virtus virtutis *virtue*, monstrant *do show.*

V. 69.

NOMINA quædam *certain nouns* monosyllaba *of one syllable* dicuntur *are* mascula *masculines:* sal *salt*, sol *the sun*, ren *a kidney*, et *and* splen *the spleen*, Car *a Carian*, Ser *a Chinese*, vir *a man or husband*, vas vadis *a surety*, as *a pound weight*, mas *the male kind*, bes *eight ounces*, Cres *a Cretan*, præs *a surety for money*, et *and* pes *a foot*, glis *a dormouse*, habens *having*, gliris genitivo *in the genitive case*, mos *a manner*, flos *a flower*, ros *dew*, et *and* Tros *a Trojan*, mus *a mouse*, dens *a tooth*, mons *a mountain*, pons *a bridge*, et *and* simul *also* fons *a fountain*, seps pro *for* serpente *a serpent*, et *and* gryps *a griffin*, Thrax *a Thracian*, rex *a king*, grex gregis *a herd of cattle*, et *and* Phryx *a Phrygian.*

Etiam *also* polysyllaba *nouns of more than one syllable*, in n *ending in* n, sunt *are* mascula *masculines;* ut *as*, Acarnan *a man of Acarnania*, lichen *a tetter*, et *and* delphin *a dolphin:* et *also* in o *nouns ending in* o, signantia *signifying* corpus *bodily substance;* ut *as*, leo *a lion*, curculio *the weasand or a weevil;* sic *also* senio *the number six*, ternio *the number three*, sermo *a discourse.*

In er, or, et os, *nouns ending in* er, or, *and* os, mascula *are masculines;* ceu *as*, crater *a bowl*, conditor *a builder*, heros *a hero:* His *to these* conjunge *join* torrens *a land-flood*, nefrens *a young toothless animal*, oriens *the east*, que *and* cliens *a client*, atque *and* bidens instrumentum *a fork with two spikes*, cum pluribus *with more nouns* in dens *ending in* dens: Adde *add to these* gigas *a giant*, elephas *an elephant*, adamas *adamant*, que *and* Garamas *a man of Libya*, que *also* tapes *tapestry*, atque *and* lebes *a caldron*, sic *so* et *also* magnes *a loadstone*, que *and* unum nomen *one noun* quintæ *of the fifth declension*, meridies *mid-day;* et *also*

Digitized by Google

quæ *the nouns which* componuntur *are compounded* ab *of* asse *a pound weight*; ut *as*, dodrans *nine ounces*, semis *half a pound*.

Mascula *these masculines* jungantur *may be joined*, Samnis *a Samnite*, hydrops *the dropsy*, et *and* thorax *the breast*; jungas *you may join* quoque *also* mascula *these masculines*, vervex *a wether sheep*, phœnix *a phœnix*, et *and* bombyx pro *for* vermiculo *a silkworm*. Tamen *yet* ex his *of these* Siren *a mermaid*, necnon *and also* soror *a sister*, uxor *a wife*, sunt *are* muliebre genus *of the feminine gender*.

V. 87.

Et *also* hæc nomina *these nouns* monosyllaba *of one syllable* sunt *are* neutralia *neuters*: mel *honey*, fel *gall*, lac *milk*, far *bread-corn*, ver *the spring*, æs *brass*, cor *the heart*, vas vasis *a vessel*, os ossis *a bone*, et *and* os oris *a mouth*, rus *the country*, thus *frankincense*, jus *right*, crus *the leg*, pus *corruption*.

Et *also* polysyllaba *nouns of many syllables* in al *ending in* al, que *and* in r *ending in* r; ut *as*, capital *a priest's veil*, laquear *a roof or ceiling*. Alec *a sharp pickle* neutrum *is neuter*, alex *a kind of fish* muliebre *is feminine*.

V. 91.

Sunt *these nouns are* dubii generis *of the doubtful gender*; scrobs *a ditch*, serpens *a serpent*, bubo *an owl*, rudens *a cable*, grus *a crane*, perdix *a partridge*, lynx *a spotted beast*, limax *a snail*, stirps pro *for* trunco *the body of a tree*, et *and* calx pedis *the heel of the foot*.

Adde *add* dies *a day*, esto *let it be* tantùm *only* mas *masculine* numero secundo *in the plural number*.

V. 94.

Sunt *these nouns are* commune *of the common of two genders*: parens *a father or mother*, que *and* auctor *an author*, infans *an infant*, adolescens *a young man or woman*, dux *a leader*, illex *a decoy or lure*, hæres *an heir*, exlex *an outlaw*.

Creata *nouns compounded* a *of* fronte *a forehead*, ut *as*, bifrons *one with two faces*; custos *a keeper*, bos *an ox, bull, or cow*, fur *a thief*, sus *a swine*, atque *and* sacerdos *a priest or priestess* (*are also of the common of two genders*).

V. 97.

Nomen *a noun* est *is* mas *of the masculine gender*, si *if* penultima *the last syllable but one* genitivi *of the genitive case* crescentis *increasing* sit *be* brevis *short*; ut, *as*, sanguis *blood*, genitivo *in the genitive case* sanguinis.

V. 99.

Hyperdissyllabon *let a noun of more than two syllables*, in do *ending in* do, quod *which* dat *makes* dinis *in the genitive case* sit *be* fœminei generis *of the feminine gender*; atque *also* in go *a*

Digitized by Google

noun ending in go, quod *which makes* ginis in genitivo *in the genitive case:* dulcedo *sweetness*, faciens *making* dulcedinis, monstrat *shows* id *that* tibi *to you*, que *and* compago compaginis *a joint* id *that*. Adjice *add* virgo *a virgin*, grando *hail*, fides *faith*, compes *a fetter*, teges *a mat*, et *and* seges *corn-land*, arbor *a tree*, que *and* hyems *winter;* sic *so* chlamys *a mantle*, et *and* sindon *fine linen*, Gorgon *Medusa's head*, icon an *image*, et *and* Amazon *an Amazon*.

Græcula *Greek nouns* finita in as *ending in* as, vel in is *or in* is; ut *as*, lampas *a lamp*, iaspis *a jasper*, cassis *a helmet*, cuspis *the point of a weapon:* item *also* mulier *a woman*, et *and* pecus *cattle* dans *making* pecudis *in the genitive case*.

Adde *add* fœmineis *to the feminine*, forfex *a pair of shears*, pellex *a harlot*, que *and*, carex *sedge*, supellex *household stuff*, appendix *an appendage*, hystrix *a porcupine*, coxendix *a hip*, que *and* filix *fern*.

V. 109.

Nomen *a noun* in a *ending in* a, signans *signifying* rem *a thing* non animatam *without life*, est *is* neutrale genus *of the neuter gender;* ut *as*, problema *a question proposed:* En *nouns also ending in* en; ut *as*, omen *a token of good or bad luck:* Ar *nouns ending in* ar; ut, *as*, jubar *a sunbeam:* Ur que *and nouns ending in* ur; ut *as*, jecur *the liver;* que *and* Us *nouns ending in* us; ut *as*, onus *a burden:* Put *nouns ending in* put; ut *as*, occiput *the hinder part of the head*.

Attamen *but* ex his *of these* pecten *a comb*, furfur *bran*, sunt *are* mascula *masculines*.

Sunt *these nouns are* neutra *of the neuter gender*, cadaver *a carcass*, verber *a stripe*, iter *a journey*, suber *cork*, tuber pro *for* fungo *a mushroom*, et *and* uber *a teat*, gingiber *ginger*, et *and* laser *the herb assafœtida*, cicer *a vetch*, et *and* piper *pepper*, atque *and* papaver *a poppy*, et *also* siser *a parsnip*.

Addas *you may add* his *to these* neutra *the neuters*, æquor *a smooth surface*, marmor *marble*, que *and* ador *fine wheat;* atque *and* pecus *cattle*, quando *when* facit *it makes* pecoris in genitivo *in the genitive case*.

V. 117.

Sunt *these nouns are* dubii generis *of the doubtful gender*, cardo *a hinge*, margo *the brink or brim of a thing*, cinis *ashes*, imbrex *a gutter-tile*, forceps *a pair of tongs*, et *and*, pumex *a pumice-stone*, cortex *the rind or bark of a tree*, et *and*, pulvis *dust*, que *and* adeps *fat*.

Adde *add* culex *a gnat*, natrix *a water-serpent*, et *and* onyx *a precious stone*, cum prole *with its compounds*, que *and* silex *a flint*, quamvis *although* usus *use* vult *will have* hæc *these nouns* melius *rather* dicier *to be called* mascula *masculines*.

Digitized by Google

V. 121.

ISTA *these nouns* sunt *are* communis generis *of the common of two genders:* vigil *a sentinel*, pugil *a boxer*, exul *a banished man or woman*, præsul *a prelate*, homo *a man or woman*, et *and* nemo *nobody*, martyr *a martyr*, Ligur *a Ligurian*, augur *a soothsayer*, et *and* Arcas *an Arcadian*, antistes *a chief priest or priestess*, miles *a soldier*, pedes *a foot man or woman*, interpres *an interpreter*, comes *a companion*, hospes *a host or guest:* sic *so* ales *any great bird*, præses *a president*, princeps *a prince or princess*, auceps *a fowler*, eques *a horse man or woman*, obses *a hostage:* atque *and* alia multa nomina *many other nouns* quæ *which* creantur *are derived* a verbis *from verbs;* ut *as*, conjux *a husband or wife*, judex *a judge*, vindex *an avenger*, opifex *a workman*, et *and* aruspex *a diviner.*

V. 127.

ADJECTIVA *adjectives* habentia *having* duntaxat *only* unam vocem *one termination*, ut *as*, felix *happy*, audax *bold*, retinent *keep* genus omne *every gender* sub unâ *under that one ending:* si *if* cadant *they fall* sub *under* geminâ voce *a double termination*, velut *as*, omnis et *and* omne *all*, vox prior *the former word* est *is* commune duûm *the common of two genders*, vox altera *the second word* neutrum *is neuter:* at *but* si *if* variant *they vary* tres voces *the three endings*, ut *as*, sacer, sacra, sacrum *sacred*, vox prima *the first word* est *is* mas *masculine*, altera *the second* fœmina *feminine*, tertia *the third* neutra *is neuter.*

Obs. 1. At *but* sunt *there are some adjectives* quæ *which* vocares *you may call* substantiva *substantives* prope *in a manner* flexu *by their declining*, tamen *yet* reperta *they are found to be* adjectiva *adjectives* naturâ *by nature* que *and* usu *by use.* Talia *such* sunt *are*, pauper *poor*, puber *ripe of age*, cum *with* degener *degenerate*, uber *fruitful*, et *and* dives *rich*, locuples *wealthy*, sospes *safe*, comes *accompanying or attending*, atque *and* superstes *surviving*, cum *with* paucis aliis *a few others* quæ *which* lectio justa *a due reading* docebit *will teach.*

Obs. 2. Hæc *these adjectives* gaudent *like* adsciscere *to take* sibi *to themselves* proprium quendam flexum *a certain peculiar way of declining*, campester *champaign*, volucer *swift*, celeber, *famous*, celer *speedy*, atque *and* saluber *wholesome;* junge *join* pedester *belonging to a footman*, equester, *belonging to a horseman*, et *and* acer *sharp;* junge *join* paluster *marshy;* atque *and* alacer *cheerful*, sylvester *woody.*

At *but* tu *you* variabis *shall decline* hæc *these adjectives* sic *thus*, hic celer *in the masculine*, hæc celeris *in the feminine*, hoc celere neutro *in the neuter gender:* aut *or* aliter *otherwise* sic *thus*, hic atque hæc celeris *in the masculine and feminine*, rursum *again* hoc celere est *is* tibi neutrum *your neuter.*

Digitized by Google

NOUNS HETEROCLITE OR IRREGULAR

CONSTRUED.

V. 144.

QUÆ *those nouns which* variant *change* genus *their gender* aut *or* flexum *declension*, quæcunque *and whatsoever nouns* novato ritu *after a new manner* deficiunt *fall short*, ve *or* superant *exceed in declining*, sunto *let them be called* heteróclita *heteroclites or nouns irregular*.

V. 146.

CERNIS *you see* hæc *these nouns* variantia *varying* partim *in part* genus *their gender*, ac *and* flexum *their declining:*

Pergamus *the city Troy* gignit *makes* Pergama in plurali numero *in the plural number*.

Prior numerus *the singular number* dat *gives* his *to these nouns* neutrum genus *the neuter gender*, alter *the plural* utrumque *both masculine and neuter:* rastrum *a rake* cum *with* fræno *the bit of a bridle*, et *and* clathrum *a bar*, porrumque *and a leek*, siserque *and a carrot;* sed *but* fræna *neuter* et *and* fræni *masculine*, quo pacto *after which manner* formant *they form* et *also* cætera *the rest*, sibilus *a hissing*, atque *and* jocus *sport*, locus *a place*.—Jungas *you may join* his *to these* quoque *also* plurima *many more*.

V. 152.

PROPAGO *the stock* quæ *which* sequitur *follows* est *is* manca *defective* casu *in case* ve *or* numero *in number*.

V. 153.

QUÆ *nouns which* variant *vary* nullum casum *no case;* ut *as*, fas *divine law*, nil *nothing*, nihil *nothing*, instar *likeness or proportion*, et *and* multa *many nouns in* u *ending in* u, simul *also in* i; veluti *as*, que *both* cornu *a horn* que *and* genu *a knee;* sic *so*, gummi *gum*, frugi *thrifty;* sic *so*, Tempe *a pleasant vale in Thessaly*, tot *so many*, quot *how many*, et *and* omnes numeros *all nouns of number* a tribus *from three* ad centum *to a hundred*, vocabis *you shall call* aptota *aptotes or without cases*.

V. 157.

QUE *and* nomen *a noun* cui vox cadit una *that has but one case* est *is called* monoptoton *a monoptote;* ceu *as*, noctu *by night*, natu *by birth*, jussu *by order*, injussu *without order*, simul *also* astu *by craft*, promptu *in readiness*, permissu *with leave:* legimus *we have read* astus *craft*, plurali *in the plural number;* legimus *we have*

Digitized by Google

read inficias *a denial,* sed *but* vox ea sola *that case alone* reperta est *is found.*

V. 161.

Sunt *those nouns are called* diptota *diptotes,* quibus *to which* duplex flexura *two cases* remansit *have remained:* ut *as,* fors *chance* dabit *will make* forte sexto *in the ablative case,* que *and* spontis *choice* sponte; et *and* jugeris *an acre* dat *makes* jugere sexto *in the ablative case;* autem *but* verberis *a stripe* verbere: quoque *also* suppetiæ *aid* dant *makes* suppetias quarto *in the accusative case;* tantundem *just so much* dat *makes* tantidem, impetis *an attack* format *makes* impete *in the ablative case;* sic *so* repetundarum *illegal exactions* repetundis. Autem *but* verberis *a stripe* cum *with* jugere *an acre* optant *wish for* quatuor casus *four cases* plurali *in the plural number.*

V. 168.

Vocantur *nouns are called* triptota *triptotes* quibus *in which* inflectis *you decline* tres casus *three cases;* sic *so* est *it is* opis nostræ *in our power,* legis *you meet with* fer opem *bring assistance,* atque *and* dignus *worthy* ope *of help:* flecte *decline* preci *prayer,* atque *and* precem, et *and* blandus petit *he sues* amicum *his friend* prece *with entreaties:* at *but* frugis *fruit* caret *wants* tantùm *only* recto *the nominative case,* et *and also* ditionis *rule;* vox *the word* vis *force* est *is* integra *entire,* nisi *unless* fortè *perhaps* dativus *the dative case* desit *be wanting.* Junge *join* his *to these* vicis *a turn* atque *and* vicem et *and* vice; quoque *also* plus *more* habet *has* pluris; et *and* plus quarto *in the accusative case:* numerus alter *the plural number* datur *is given* omnibus his *to all these nouns.*

V. 175.

Notes *you may observe* propria cuncta *all proper names,* quibus est *which have* natura *a nature* coercens *restraining them,* ne fiant *from becoming* plurima *plurals;* et *and* alia multa *many other nouns* occurrent tibi *will fall in your way* legenti *in reading,* raro *seldom* excedentia *exceeding* numerum primum *the singular number.*

V. 178.

Mascula *these masculines* sunt *are* contenta *confined* numero secundo *to the plural number* tantùm *only,* manes *ghosts,* majores *ancestors,* cancelli *lattices,* liberi *children,* et *and* antes *the foreranks of vines,* et *and* lemures *spectres,* proceres *nobles,* simul *also* fasti *annals,* atque *and* minores *posterity,* posteri *posterity* et *and* hi Superi *the Gods above,* natales *an extraction;* adde *add* penates *household gods,* et *and* loca *names of places* plurali *of the plural number,* quales *as* que *both* Gabii *a city in Italy,* que *and* Locri *the inhabitants of Locris,* et *and* quæcunque *whatever nouns* similis rationis *of like nature* legas *you may read* passim *in authors.*

Digitized by Google

Hæc *these nouns* sunt *are* fœminei generis *of the feminine gender*, que *and* numeri secundi *of the plural number:* exuviæ *any thing stript off from the body*, phalĕræ *horse-trappings*, que *and* grates *thanks*, manubiæ *the spoils of war*, et *and* idus *the ides of the month*, nundinæ *a fair* itemque *and also* indutiæ *a truce*, item *also* que *both* insidiæ *an ambush*, que *and* minæ *threats*, excubiæ *watch by day or night*, nonæ *the nones of the month*, nugæ *trifles*, que *and* tricæ *toys*, calendæ *the calends of a month*, quisquiliæ *the sweepings or refuse of any thing*, thermæ *a hot-bath*, cunæ *a cradle*, diræ *curses*, que *and* exequiæ *funeral rites*, feriæ *holidays*, et *and* inferiæ *sacrifices performed to the dead;* sic *so* que *both* primitiæ *the first fruits of the year*, que *and* plagæ signantes *signifying* retia *nets*, et *and* valvæ *folding-doors*, que *and* divitiæ *riches*, item *also* nuptiæ *a marriage*, et *and* lactes *the bowels;* Thebæ *Thebes* et *and* Athenæ *Athens* ăddantur *may be added*, quod genus *of which sort* invenias *you may find* et *also* nomina plura *more names* locorum *of places.*

Hæc neutra *these nouns neuter* pluralia *of the plural number* leguntur *are read* rariùs *seldom* primo *in the singular:* mœnia *the walls of a city*, cum *with* tesquis *rough and desert places*, præcordia *the midriff of a body*, lustra *the dens* ferarum *of wild beasts*, arma *arms*, mapalia *Numidian cottages*, sic *so*, bellaria *junkets*, munia *an office or charge*, castra *a camp;* funus *a funeral* petit *requires* justa *solemnities*, et *and* virgo *a virgin* petit *requires* sponsalia *espousals;* disertus *an eloquent man* amat *loves* rostra *the pulpit*, que *and* pueri *children* gestant *carry* crepundia *rattles*, que *and* infantes *infants* colunt cunabula *lie in cradles;* augur *a sooth-sayer* consŭlit *consults* exta *the entrails*, et *and* absolvens *finishing his sacrifice* superis *to the gods above* recantat *chants over* effata *their decrees;* festa *the feasts* deum *of the gods*, ceu *as*, Bacchanalia *feasts dedicated to Bacchus*, poterunt *will be proper* jungi *to be joined.* Quod si *and if* leges *you shall read* plura *more*, licet reponas *you may place them* quoque *also* hac classe *in this rank.*

V. 202.

Hæc *these nouns* sunt *are* simul *also* et *both* quarti *of the fourth* atque *and* secundi flexûs *of the second declension:* enim *for* laurus *a bay-tree* facit *makes* genitivo *in the genitive case* lauri et *and* laurûs; sic *so* quercus *an oak*, pinus *a pine-tree*, ficus pro *for* fructu *a fig* atque *and* arbore *the tree;* sic *also* colus *a distaff*, atque *and* penus *all kinds of victuals*, cornus, quando *when* habetur *it signifies* arbor *a tree;* sic *so* lacus *a lake*, atque *and* domus *a house:* licet *although* hæc *these* nec recurrant *are not found* ubique *in every case.* Leges *you will read* quoque *also* plura *more* his *than these*, quæ *which* jure relinquas *you may well leave* priscis *to the ancients.*

Digitized by Google

AS IN PRÆSENTI, ETC.,

OR

THE RULES FOR VERBS, CONSTRUED

V. 1.

AS in præsenti *a verb making* as *in the present tense* format *forms* perfectum *the preterperfect tense* in avi: ut *as*, no nas *to swim* navi, vocito vocitas *to call often* vocitavi. Deme *except* lavo *to wash* lavi, juvo *to help* juvi, que *and* nexo *to knit* dans ui *making* ui, et *and* seco *to cut* quod *which makes* secui, sic et *so too* mico *to glitter* quod *which* dat *makes* micui, sic *so* plico *to fold* quod *which makes* plicui, sic et *so too* frico *to rub* quod *which* dat *makes* fricui; sic *so* domo *to tame* quod *which makes* domui, tono *to thunder* quod *which makes* tonui, verbum *the verb* sono *to sound* quod *which makes* sonui, crepo *to crack* quod *which makes* crepui, veto *to forbid* quod *which* dat *makes* vetui, atque *and* cubo *to lie along* cubui: hæc *these verbs* rarò formantur *are seldom formed* in avi. Do das *to give* vult *will* formare *form* ritè *by custom* dedi, sto stas *to stand* steti.

V. 10.

Es in præsenti *a verb making* ēs *in the present tense* format *forms* perfectum *the preterperfect tense* dans ui *by* ui: ut *as*, nigreo nigres *to grow black* nigrui: excipe *except* jubeo *to bid* jussi; sorbeo *to sup up* habet *hath* sorbui quoque *also* sorpsi, mulceo *to stroke gently* mulsi; luceo *to shine* vult will *have* luxi, sedeo *to sit* sedi, que *and* video *to see* vult *will have* vidi: sed *but* prandeo *to dine makes* prandi, strideo *to screak* stridi, suadeo *to advise* suasi, rideo *to laugh* risi, et *and* ardeo *to be on fire* habet *hath* arsi.

Syllaba prima *the first syllable* his quatuor *in these four verbs* infra *following* geminatur *is doubled:* namque *for* pendeo *to hang down* vult *will have* pependi, que *and* mordeo *to bite* momordi, spondeo *to betroth* vult *will* habere *have* spopondi, que *and* tondeo *to clip or shear* totondi.

Si *if* l vel r, l *or* r, stet *stand* ante *before* geo, geo vertitur *is changed* in si *into* si: ut *as*, urgeo *to urge* ursi; mulgeo *to milk* dat *makes* mulsi quoque *also* mulxi, frigeo *to be cold* frixi, lugeo *to mourn* luxi, et *and* augeo *to increase* habet *hath* auxi.

Fleo fles *to weep* dat *makes* flevi, leo les *to anoint* levi, que *and* inde natum *its compound* deleo *to wipe out* delevi; pleo ples *to fill* plevi, neo *to spin* nevi.

Mansi, formatur *is formed* a *from* maneo *to tarry;* torqueo *to twist* vult *will have* torsi, hæreo *to stick* hæsi.

Digitized by Google

Veo, fit *is made* vi: *as*, ferveo *to be hot* fervi: niveo *to wink or beckon*, et *and* inde satum *its compound* conniveo *to wink*, poscit *requires* nivi et *and* nixi: cieo *to stir up* civi, que *and* vieo *to bind* vievi.

V. 28.

TERTIA *the third conjugation* formabit *will form* præteritum *the preterperfect tense* ut *as* manifestum *is shown* hic *here:*

Bo, fit *is made* bi: *as*, lambo *to lick* lambi: excipe *except* scribo *to write* scripsi, et *and* nubo *to be married* nupsi: antiquum *the old verb* cumbo *to lie down* dat *maketh* cubui.

Co, fit *is made* ci: *as* vinco *to overcome* vici; parco *to spare* vult *will have* peperci et *and* parci; dico *to say* dixi, quoque *also* duco *to lead* duxi.

Do, fit *is made* di: *as*, mando *to eat* mandi; sed *but* scindo *to cut* dat *makes* scidi, findo *to cleave* fidi, fundo *to pour out* fudi; que *and* tundo *to pound* tutudi, pendo *to weigh* pependi, tendo *to bend* tetendi, que *and* junge *join* cado *to fall* quod *which* format *forms* cecĭdi; cædo pro *for* verbero *to beat* cecīdi; cedo pro *for* discedere *to depart*, sive *or* locum dare *to give place*, cessi: vado *to go*, rado *to shave*, lædo *to hurt*, ludo *to play*, divido *to divide*, trudo *to thrust*, claudo *to shut*, plaudo *to clap hands*, rodo *to gnaw*, ex do *from* do, semper *always* faciunt si *make* si.

Go, fit *is made* xi: *as*, jungo *to join* junxi: sed r *but the letter* r ante *before* go vult *will have* si, ut *as* spargo *to sprinkle* sparsi; lego *to read* legi, et *and* ago *to act* facit *makes* egi: tango *to touch* dat *makes* tetigi, pungo *to prick* punxi, que *and* pupugi; frango *to break* dat *makes* fregi, pago *for* paciscor *to covenant* vult *will have* pepigi; etiam *also* pango *to fasten* pegi, sed *but* usus *custom* maluit *had rather form* panxi.

Ho, fit *is made* xi: ceu *as* traho *to draw* traxi docet *shows*, et *and* veho *to carry* vexi.

Lo, fit *is made* ui: ceu *as*, colo *to till* colui: excipe *except* psallo *to play upon an instrument* cum p *with* p, et *and* sallo *to season with salt* sine p *without* p, nam *for* utrumque *both* tibi format *make* li; vello *to pluck* dat *makes* velli quoque *also* vulsi, fallo *to deceive* fefelli; cello pro *for* frango *to break* ceculi, que *and* pello *to drive away* pepuli.

Mo, fit *is made* ui: ceu *as*, vomo *to vomit* vomui; sed *but* emo *to buy* facit *maketh* emi; como *to deck the hair* petit *requires* compsi, promo *to draw out* prompsi: adjice *add* demo *to take away* quod *which* format *forms* dempsi, sumo *to take* sumpsi: premo *to press* pressi.

No, fit *is made* vi: ceu *as*, sino *to suffer* sivi; excipe *except* temno *to contemn* tempsi; sterno *to strew* dat *makes* stravi, sperno *to despise* sprevi, lino *to smear over* levi, interdum *sometimes* lini et *and* livi, quoque *also* cerno *to discern* crevi; gigno *to beget*, pono *to put*, cano *to sing*, dant *make* genui, posui, cecini.

Digitized by Google

Po, fit *is made* psi: *as*, scalpo *to scratch* scalpsi; excipe *except* rumpo *to break* rupi, et *and* strepo *to make a noise*, quod *which* format *formeth* strepui, crepo *to crack*, quod *which* dat *makes* crepui.

Quo, fit *is made* qui: *as*, linquo *to leave* liqui; demito *except* coquo *to cook or dress meat* coxi.

Ro, fit *is made* vi: ceu *as*, sero pro *for* planto *to plant* et *and* semino *to sow* sevi, quod *which* signans *signifying* ordino *to set in order* dabit *will make* semper *always* melius *rather* serui; verro *to brush* vult *will have* verri; uro *to burn* vult *will have* ussi, gero *to bear* gessi, quæro *to seek* quæsivi, tero *to beat or bruise* trivi, curro *to run* cucurri.

So, formabit *will form* sivi, veluti *as*, arcesso *to send for*, incesso *to attack*, atque *and* lacesso *to provoke* probat *shows:* sed *but* tolle *except* capesso *to take in hand* quod *which* facit *makes* capessi, que *and* capessivi; atque *and* facesso *to despatch* facessi, et *also* viso *to go to see* visi; sed *but* pinso *to pound or grind* habebit *will have* pinsui.

Sco, fit *is made* vi: *as*, pasco *to feed cattle* pavi; posco *to require* vult *will have* poposci, disco *to learn* vult *will* formare *form* didici, quinisco *to nod the head* quexi.

To, fit *is made* ti: *as*, verto *to turn* verti; sed *but* activum *let this verb active* sisto, pro *for* facio stare *to make to stand* notetur *be marked*, nam *for* dat *it makes* jure *by right* stiti; mitto *to send* dat *giveth* misi, peto *to ask* vult *will* formare *form* petivi; sterto *to snore* habet *hath* stertui, meto *to mow* messui. Exi, fit *is made* ab *from* ecto: ut *as*, flecto *to bend* flexi; necto *to knit* dat *makes* nexui habetque *and also has* nexi; etiam *also* pecto *to comb* dat *makes* pexui, habet *it hath* quoque *also* pexi.

Vo, fit *is made* vi: *as*, volvo *to roll* volvi; excipe *except* vivo *to live* vixi.

Xo, fit *is made* ui: *as*, texo *to weave*, quod *which* habebit *will have* texui, monstrat *showeth*.

Cio, fit *is made* ci: *as*, facio *to do* feci, quoque *also* jacio *to cast* jeci: antiquum *the old verb* lacio *to allure* lexi, quoque *also* specio *to behold* spexi, elicio *to elicit* elicui; sed *but* cætera *the rest* a lacio *from* lacio (*make*) lexi.

Dio, fit *is made* di: *as*, fodio *to dig* fodi.

Gio *makes* gi: ceu *as*, fugio *to fly* fugi.

Pio, fit *is made* pi: *as*, capio *to take* cepi; excipe *except* cupio *to desire* cupivi; et *and* rapio *to snatch* rapui, sapio *to savour or taste* sapui, atque *and* sapivi.

Rio, fit *is made* ri: *as*, pario *to bring forth young* peperi.

Tio *makes* ssi, geminans s *doubling the letter* s: ut *as* quatio *to shake* quassi, quod *which* vix reperitur *is scarcely found* in usu *in use*.

Denique *finally* uo, fit *is made* ui: *as*, statuo *to erect* statui; pluo *to rain* format *formeth* pluvi, sive *or* plui; sed *but* struo *to build makes* struxi, fluo *to flow* fluxi.

Digitized by Google

…fourth conjugation dat is ivi *makes* is *in the present*
… scio scis *to know* scivi *monstrat*
… venio to come dans *making* veni,
… rapio to rape rapui, furcio *to*
… sepio, sentio *to per-*
… mentio *to draw* hausi,
… sallio pro *for* salio *to*
… amicui.

… compound dat
… perfect tense: ut
… evidently monstrat
… simplex the
… nomentur is not
… except his tribes
… to run out, re-
… verbs rightly
… is stand, pasco *to*

… sub, cum with sub,
… to besiege, multi-
… applico to apply,
… explico

… to smell vult will
… compound verb inde
… is but redolet it
… simplicia *of the simple*

… pango to prick
… pungo to prick again,
… repungi.
… mutuo when cut it is
… to cold, credo *to*
… to restore, perdo *to*
… agnosco, cognosco *to* know,
… venio to sell, vendo
… abscondi. Nemo
… *have* sibi.

… si *if* compescuerint they
… *the first* tense
… praeteriti *of the preterperfect*
… dicens *making* cecinerim,

Digitized by Google

lacto *to suckle*, delecto *to delight*, sacro *to dedicate* consecro; et sic *and so*, fallo *to deceive*, arceo *to drive away*, tracto *to handle*, fatiscor *to be weary*, cando *to burn* vetus *an old word*, capto *to lie in wait*, jacto *to throw*, patior *to suffer*, que *and* gradior *to step*, partio *to divide*, carpo *to crop*, patro *to achieve or finish*, scando *to climb*, spargo *to sprinkle;* que *and* pario *to bring forth young*, cujus duo nata *whose two compounds*, comperit *to know for certain* et *and* reperit *to find*, dant *make the preterperfect tense* per i *in* i; sed *but* cætera *the rest* per ui *in* ui, velut *as* hæc *these*, aperire *to open*, operire *to cover*.

Hæc duo composta *let these two compounds* a *of* pasco pavi *to feed cattle*, compesco *to pasture together*, dispesco *to drive from pasture*, notentur *be observed* habere *to make* tantùm *only* pescui; cætera *the rest*, ut *as*, epasco *to eat up*, servabunt *will keep* usum *the use* simplicis *of the simple verb*.

V. 122.

Hæc *these verbs*, habeo *to have*, lateo *to lie hid*, salio *to leap*, statuo *to erect*, cado *to fall*, lædo *to hurt*, et *and* tango *to touch*, atque *and* cano *to sing*, sic *so* quæro *to seek*, cædo cecidi *to beat*, sic *also* egeo *to want*, teneo *to hold fast*, taceo *to hold one's peace*, sapio *to savour*, que *and* rapio *to snatch*, si *if* componantur *they are compounded*, mutant *change* vocalem primam *the first vowel* in i *into* i: ut *as*, rapio *to snatch* rapui, eripio *to take away by force* eripui; natum *a compound* a *of* cano *to sing* dat *makes* præteritum *the preterperfect tense* per ui, *in* ui, ceu *as*, concino *to sing in concert* concinui.

Sic *also* displiceo *to displease* a *of* placeo *to please;* sed *but* hæc duo *these two compounds*, complaceo *to please* cum *with* perplaceo *to please very much*, benè servant *always keep* usum *the use* simplicis *of the simple verb*.

Composita *the compounds* a *of* verbis *the verbs* calco *to tread*, salto *to leap or dance*, mutant *change* a per u, a *into* u: conculco *to tread upon*, inculco *to tread in*, resulto *to rebound*, demonstrant *show* id *that* tibi *to you*.

Composita *the compounds* a *of* claudo *to shut*, quatio *to shake*, lavo *to wash*, rejiciunt a *cast away* a: occludo *to shut against*, excludo *to shut out*, a *from* claudo *to shut*, docet *teaches* id *this;* que *and* percutio *to strike*, excutio *to strike out* a *from* quatio *to strike;* a *from* lavo *to wash*, nata *the compounds* proluo *to drench*, diluo *to wash out*.

V. 135.

Si *if* componas *you compound* hæc *these verbs*, ago *to act*, emo *to buy*, sedeo *to sit*, rego *to rule*, frango *to break*, et *and* capio *to take*, jacio *to cast*, lacio *to allure*, specio *to behold*, premo *to press*, pango *to fasten*, sibi mutant *they change* vocalem primam *the first vowel* præsentis *of the present tense* in i *into* i, nunquam *never* præteriti *of the preterperfect tense;* ceu *as of* frango *to break*, refringo *to*

Digitized by Google

break open makes refregi; incipio *to begin* incepi, a *of* capio *to take;* sed *but* pauca *let a few* notentur *be marked:* namque *for* perago *to finish* sequitur *follows* suum simplex *its simple verb,* que *and* satago *to be busy;* atque *and* dego *to live* ab *from* ago *to act* dat *makes* degi, cogo *to bring together* coegi; sic *so* a *from* rego *to rule,* pergo *to go forward makes* perrexi; quoque *and* surgo *to rise* vult *will have* surrexi; mediâ syllabâ *the middle syllable* præsentis *of the present tense* ademptâ *being taken away.*

Ista quatuor composita *these four compound verbs* a *of* pango *to fix or fasten* retinent a *keep* a: depango *to fix in the ground,* oppango *to fasten against,* circumpango *to fasten about,* atque *and* repango *to fasten again.*

Facio *to do* variat *changeth* nil *nothing,* nisi *unless* præposito præeunte *a preposition goes before;* olfacio *to smell out* docet *teaches* id *that,* cum *with* calfacio *to make hot,* que *and* inficio *to infect.*

Nata *the compounds* a *of* lego *to read,* re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad, præeunte *going before,* servant *keep* vocalem *the vowel* præsentis *of the present tense;* cætera *the rest* mutant *change it* in i *into* i; de quibus *of which* hæc *these* tantùm *only,* intelligo *to understand,* diligo *to love,* negligo *to neglect,* faciunt *make* præteritum *their preterperfect tense* lexi; reliqua omnia *all the rest* legi.

V. 152.

Nunc *now* discas *you may learn* formare *to form* Supinum *the supine* ex præterito *from the preterperfect tense.*

Bi, sumit *takes* sibi *to itself* tum: namque *for* sic *so* bibi *to drink* fit *makes* bibitum.

Ci, fit *is made* ctum: *as* vici *to overcome* victum testatur *shows,* et *and* ici *to smite* dans *making* ictum, feci *to do* factum, quoque *also* jeci *to cast* jactum.

Di, fit *is made* sum: *as* vidi *to see* visum: quædam *some* geminant s *double* s; ut *as,* pandi *to open* passum, sedi *to sit* sessum; adde *add* scidi *to cut* quod *which* dat *makes* scissum, atque *and* fidi *to cleave* fissum, quoque *also* fodi *to dig* fossum.

Hic *here* etiam *also* advertas *you may mark,* quod *that* syllaba prima *the first syllable,* quam *which* præteritum *the preterperfect tense* vult geminari *will have doubled,* non geminatur *is not doubled* supinis *in the supines:* idque *and this* totondi *to clip or shear* dans *making* tonsum, docet *shows,* atque *and* cecidi *to beat* quod *which maketh* cæsum, et *and* cecĭdi *to fall* quod *which* dat *maketh* casum, atque *and* tetendi *to bend* quod *which maketh* tensum et *also* tentum, tutudi *to beat or pound* tunsum, atque *and* dedi *to give* quod *which* jure *by right* poscit *requires* datum, atque *and* momordi *to bite* vult *will have* morsum.

Gi, fit *is made* ctum: *as,* legi *to read* lectum; pegi *to fasten* que *and* pepigi *to covenant* dant *make* pactum, fregi *to break* fractum,

Digitized by Google

quoque *also* tetigi *to touch* tactum, egi *to act* actum, pupugi *to prick* punctum; fugi *to flee* dat *makes* fugitum.

Li, fit *is made* sum: *as* salli, stans *standing* pro *for* sale condio *to season with salt, makes* salsum; pepuli *to drive away* dat *makes* pulsum, ceculi *to break* culsum; atque *and* fefelli *to deceive* falsum; velli *to pluck* dat *makes* vulsum; quoque *also* tuli *to bear* habet *hath* latum.

V. 171.

Mi, ni, pi, qui, formant *form* tum, velut *as* manifestum *is manifest* hic *here:* emi *to buy* emptum, veni *to come* ventum, cecini a *from* cano *to sing* cantum; cepi a *from* capio *to take* captum, quoque *also* cœpi *to begin* cœptum: rupi a *from* rumpo *to break* ruptum; quoque *also* liqui *to leave* lictum.

Ri, fit *is made* sum: *as*, verri *to brush* versum; excipe *except* peperi *to bring forth young* partum.

Si, fit *is made* sum: *as*, visi *to go to see* visum; tamen *but* misi *to send* formabit *will form* missum, s geminato s *being doubled;* excipe *except* fulsi *to prop* fultum, hausi *to draw* haustum, sarsi *to patch* sartum, quoque *also* farci *to stuff* fartum, ussi *to burn* ustum, gessi *to bear* gestum; torsi *to wreathe* requirit *hath* duo *two supines* tortum et *and* torsum; indulsi *to indulge* indultum que *and* indulsum.

Psi, fit *is made* ptum: *as*, scripsi *to write* scriptum, quoque *also* sculpsi *to engrave* sculptum.

Ti, fit *is made* tum: namque *for* steti a *from* sto *to stand*, que *and* stiti a *from* sisto *to make to stand*, ambo *both* ritè *by right* dant *make* statum: tamen *but* excipe *except* verti *to turn* versum.

Vi, fit *is made* tum: *as*, flavi *to blow* flatum; excipe *except* pavi *to feed cattle* pastum; lavi *to wash* dat *makes* lotum, interdum *sometimes* lautum, atque *and* lavatum; potavi *to drink* facit *makes* potum, interdum *sometimes* et *also* potatum; sed *but* favi *to favour makes* fautum, cavi *to beware* cautum; a *from* sero sevi *to sow* ritè formes *you may rightly form* satum; livi que *and* lini *to besmear* dant *make* litum; solvi a *from* solvo *to loose* solutum, volvi a *from* volvo *to roll* volutum; singultivi *to sob* vult *will have* singultum, veneo venis venivi *to be sold* venum, sepelivi *to bury* ritè *by right* sepultum.

Quod *a verb that* dat *makes* ui, dat *makes* itum: *as*, domui *to tame* domitum; excipe *except* quodvis verbum *every verb* in uo, quia *because* semper formabit *it will always form* ui in utum ui *in* utum, ut *as*, exui *to put off* exutum: deme *except* rui a *from* ruo *to rush* dans *making* ruitum; secui *to cut* vult *will have* sectum, enecui *to slay* enectum, que *and* fricui *to rub* frictum, item *also* miscui *to mingle* mistum, et *and* amicui *to clothe* dat *makes* amictum: torrui *to roast* habet *hath* tostum, docui *to teach* doctum, que *and* tenui *to hold* tentum, consului *to consult* consultum, alui *to*

Digitized by Google

feed altum que *and* alitum; sic *so* salui *to leap* saltum, colui *to till* quoque *also* occului *to hide* cultum; pinsui *to pound or grind* habet *hath* pistum, rapui *to snatch* raptum, que *and* serui a *from* sero *to set in order* vult *will have* sertum; sic *so* quoque *also* texui *to weave* habet *hath* textum.

Sed *but* hæc *these verbs* mutant *change* ui in sum ui *into* sum: nam *for* censeo *to judge* habet *hath* censum, cellui *to break* celsum, meto messui *to reap* habet *hath* quoque *also* messum; item *also* nexui *to knit* nexum; sic *so* quoque *also* pexui *to comb* habet *hath* pexum.

Xi, fit *is made* ctum: *as*, vinxi *to bind* vinctum: quinque *five* abjiciunt n *cast away* n, ut *as*, finxi *to form or fashion* fictum, minxi *to make water* mictum, adjice *add* pinxi *to paint* dans *giving* pictum, strinxi *to bind fast* strictum, quoque *also* rinxi *to grin* rictum.

Flexi *to bend*, plexi *to twist*, fixi *to fasten*, dant *make* xum; et *and* fluo *to flow* fluxum.

V. 209.

Quodque compositum supinum *every compound supine* formatur *is formed* ut *as* simplex *the simple supine*, quamvis *although* eadem syllaba *the same syllable* non stet *does not continue* semper *always* utrique *to them both*. Composita *the compounds* a *of* tunsum *to pound*, n demptâ *by taking away* n, *make* tusum; a *of* ruitum *to rush*, i media *the middle letter* i demptâ *being taken away* fit *is made* rutum; et *and* quoque *also* a *of* saltum *to leap* sultum; composta *the compounds* a *of* sero *to sow*, quando *when* format *it forms* satum, dant *make* situm.

Hæc *these supines* captum *to take*, factum *to do*, jactum *to cast*, raptum *to snatch*, mutant a per e *change* a *into* e; et *and* cantum *to sing*, partum *to bring forth young*, sparsum *to sprinkle*, carptum *to crop*, quoque *also* fartum *to stuff*.

Verbum *the verb* edo *to eat* compositum *being compounded* non facit *maketh not* estum, sed *but* esum; unum *one* duntaxat *only* comedo *to eat up* formabit *will form* utrumque *both*.

A *from* nosco *to know* duo *these two compounds* tantùm *only*, cognitum *to know* et *and* agnitum *to know again*, habentur *are found*; cætera *the rest* dant *make* notum: noscitum jam *now* est *is* nullo in usu *not in use*.

V. 220.

Verba in or, *verbs ending in* or, admittunt *take* præteritum *their preterperfect tense* ex posteriore supino *from the latter supine*, u verso *being turned* per us *into* us, et *and* sum vel fui consociato *being added*; ut *as*, a *of* lectu *to be read* lectus sum vel *or* fui *I have been read*. At *but* horum *of these verbs* nunc *sometimes* est *there is* deponens *a deponent*, nunc *sometimes* est *there is* commune *a common* notandum *to be noted*.

Digitized by Google

Nam *for* labor *to slide* dat *makes* lapsus; patior *to suffer* passus, et *and* ejus nata *its compounds*, ut *as*, compatior *to suffer together*, compassus que *and* perpetior *to endure* formans *forming* perpessus; fateor *to own* dat *makes* fassus, et *and* inde nata *its compounds*, ut *as*, confiteor *to confess* confessus, que *and* diffiteor *to deny* formans *forming* diffessus; gradior *to step* dat *makes* gressus, et *and* inde nata *its compounds*, ut *as*, digredior *to step aside* digressus; junge *add* fatiscor *to be weary* fessus sum, metior *to measure* mensus sum, et *and* utor *to use* usus.

Ordior pro *for* texo *to weave* dat *makes* orditus, pro *for* incepto *to begin* orsus, nitor *to strive* nisus vel *or* nixus sum, et *and* ulciscor *to revenge* ultus; simul *also* irascor *to be angry* iratus, atque *and* reor *to suppose* ratus sum, obliviscor *to forget* vult *will have* oblitus sum, fruor *to enjoy* optat *chooseth* fructus: tum demum *then finally*, junge *add* misereri *to have pity* misertus.

Tuor *to see* et *and* tueor *to defend* non vult *will not have* tutus sed *but* tuitus sum; adde *add* locutus a *of* loquor *to speak*, et *and* adde *add* secutus a *of* sequor *to follow*.

Experior *to try* facit *makes* expertus; pasciscor *to make a bargain* gaudet *will* formare *form* pactus sum, nanciscor *to get* nactus; apiscor *to obtain*, quod *which* est *is* vetus verbum *an old verb*, aptus sum, unde *from whence* adipiscor *to get* adeptus.

Junge *add* queror *to complain* questus, junge *add* proficiscor *to go* profectus, expergiscor *to awake* experrectus sum; et *and* quoque *also* hæc *these*, comminiscor *to devise* commentus, nascor *to be born* natus, que *and* morior *to die* mortuus, atque *and* orior *to rise* quod *which* facit *makes* præteritum *its preterperfect tense* ortus.

V. 245.

Hæc *these verbs* habent *have* præteritum *a preterperfect tense* activæ *of the active* et *and* passivæ vocis *of the passive voice:* cœno *to sup* format tibi *formeth you* cœnavi et *and* cœnatus sum, juro *to swear* juravi et *and* juratus, que *and* poto *to drink* potavi et *and* potus, titubo *to stumble* titubavi vel *or* titubatus.

Prandeo *to dine* prandi et *and* pransus sum, placeo *to please* dat *makes* placui et *and* placitus, suesco *to accustom* dat *makes* suevi quoque *and also* vult *will have* suetus.

Nubo *to be married* nupsi que *and* nupta sum, mereor *to deserve* meritus sum vel *or* merui; adde *add*, libet *it pleaseth* libuit licitum, et *and* adde *add*, licet *it is lawful* quod *which makes* licuit licitum; tædet *it wearieth* quod *which* dat *makes* tæduit et *and* pertæsum adde *add* pudet *it shameth* faciens *making* puduit que *and* puditum, atque *and* piget *it grieveth*, quod *which* tibi format *forms you* piguit que *and* pigitum.

V. 256.

Neutro-passivum *a neuter-passive verb* format tibi *forms you*

Digitized by Google

præteritum *its preterperfect tense* sic *thus:* gaudeo *to be glad* gavisus sum, fido *to trust* fisus, et *and* audeo *to dare* ausus sum, fio *to be made* factus, soleo *to be wont* solitus sum.

V. 259.

Fugiunt *these verbs want* præteritum *the preterperfect tense,* vergo *to bend,* ambigo *to doubt,* glisco *to spread,* fatisco *to chink,* polleo *to be powerful,* nideo *to shine:* tum *then* ferio *to strike,* furo *to rage,* tum *then* puerasco *to grow a child;* omnia que inceptiva *and all inceptive verbs* et *and* quæ *which* caruere *want* supinis *their supines;* ut *as,* metuor *to be feared,* timeor *to be feared:* meditativa omnia *all meditatives,* præter *besides* parturio *to be in labour,* esurio, *to be hungry,* quæ duo *which two* servant *keep* præteritum *their preterperfect tense.*

V. 264.

Hæc verba *these verbs* rarò *seldom* aut *or* nunquam *never* retinebunt *will have* supinum *their supine:* lambo *to lick,* mico micui *to glitter,* rudo *to bray as an ass;* tum *then* scabo *to claw,* parco peperci *to spare,* dispesco *to drive from pasture,* posco *to require,* disco *to learn,* compesco *to restrain,* quinisco *to nod the head,* dego *to live,* ango, *to throttle,* sugo *to suck,* lingo *to lick,* ningo *to snow;* que *and* satago *to be busy,* psallo *to play on an instrument,* volo *to be willing,* nolo *to be unwilling,* malo *to be more willing,* tremo *to tremble,* strideo, stridо, *to screak,* flaveo *to be yellow,* liveo *to be black and blue,* avet *to covet,* paveo *to dread,* conniveo *to wink,* fervet *to be hot.*

Compositum *a compound* a *of* nuo *to nod,* ut *as,* renuo *to refuse;* a *of* cado *to fall,* ut *as,* accĭdo *to fall upon,* præter *except* occĭdo *to fall down,* quod *which* facit *makes* occasum, que *and* recĭdo *to fall back* recasum; respuo *to refuse,* linquo *to leave,* luo *to pay,* metuo *to fear,* cluo *to shine or to be famous,* frigeo *to be cold,* calveo *to be bald,* et *and* sterto *to snore,* timeo *to fear:* sic *so* luceo *to shine,* et *and* arceo *to drive away,* cujus composita *whose compounds* habent *have* ercitum: sic *so* nata *the compounds* a *of* gruo *to cry like a crane,* ut *as,* ingruo *to invade* et *and* quæcunque neutra *whatever neuters* secundæ *of the second conjugation* formantur *are formed* in ui; excipias *you may except* oleo *to smell,* doleo *to be in pain,* placeo *to please,* que *and* taceo *to hold one's peace,* pareo *to obey,* item *also* careo *to want,* noceo *to hurt,* jaceo *to lie down,* que *and* lateo *to lie hid,* et *also* valeo *to be in health,* caleo *to be hot;* namque *for* hæc *these verbs* gaudent supino *have a supine.*

Digitized by Google

SYNTAXIS:

OR THE

CONSTRUCTION OF WORDS.

CONCORDANTIA PRIMA.

Nominativus et Verbum.

1. VERBUM personale concordat cum nominativo numero et personâ: ut,

Sera nimis vita est crastĭna, vive hodie.—Mart.

2. Nominativus Pronominum raro *exprimitur*, nisi distinctionis aut emphasis gratiâ: ut,

Vos *damnâstis:* quasi dicat, *præterea nemo.*

3. Cum Persōnæ sunt diversæ, Verbum digniorem sequitur: ut,

Si tu et Tullia valetis, bene est; ego et Cicero bene valemus.—Cic.

4. Verba Substantiva, ut, *sum, fio, existo;* Verba Vocandi passiva, ut, *nomĭnor, appellor, dicor, vocor, nuncŭpor;* et iis similia, ut, *videor, appareo, audio, habeor, existĭmor,* utrinque eosdem casus habent: ut,

Deus est summum bonum.

Digitized by Google

5. ITEM omnia fere Verba post se adjectivum admittunt, quod cum substantivo verbi, casu, genere, et numero concordat: ut,

Omnem crede diem tibi diluxisse supremum.—Hor.

6. VERBA affirmandi et sciendi interdum utrinque nominativum habent, quùm, quod quis affirmat, id non de *alio* quoquam sed de *se ipso* affirmat: ut,

Vir bonus et sapiens dignis ait esse paratus.—Hor.

7. VERBA *videor, dicor, audior,* et similia, *personaliter* multo sæpius quàm *impersonaliter* usurpari solent: ut,

Lycurgi temporibus Homerus fuisse traditur.—Cic.

8. Aliquando Oratio est verbo nominativus: ut,

Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes
Emollit mores, nec sinit esse feros.—Ovid.

9. Aliquando adverbium cum genitivo: ut,

Partim virorum ceciderunt in bello.

10. QUUM alterum Verbum præcedit, (et præcipuè si sit verbum *sentiendi,*) Verbum ponitur in infinitivo, et nomen in accusativo: ut,

Te rediisse incolumen gaudeo.

11. VERBUM inter duos nominativos diversorum numerorum positum, cum alterutro concordare potest: ut,

Amantium iræ amoris integratio est.—Ter.

12. Nomen multitudinis *singulare* aliquando verbo *plurali* jungitur: ut,

Pars abiere.

Digitized by Google

CONCORDANTIA SECUNDA.

Substantivum et Adjectivum.

13. Adjectiva, participia, et pronomina, cum substantivo genĕre, numero, et casu, concordant: ut,

Rara avis in terris, nigroque simillima cygno.—Juv.

14. Cum substantiva sunt diversi generis, adjectivum dignioris genus, aliquando et numerum, sequitur: ut,

Cerĕre nati sunt Liber et Libĕra.—Cic.

15. Aliquando Oratio supplet locum substantivi, adjectivo in neutro genere posito: ut,

Audito, regem Doroberniam proficisci.

16. Aliquando infinitivus ponitur pro substantivo: ut,

Scire tuum nihil est. Nostrum illud vivere triste.

17. Adjectivum sæpe in neutro genere ponitur sine substantivo: ut,

Stultum est perituræ parcere chartæ.—Juv.

CONCORDANTIA TERTIA.

Relativum et Antecedens.

18. Relativum cum antecedente concordat, genere, numero, et personâ: ut,

Vir bonus est quis?

Qui consulta patrum, qui leges juraque servat.—Hor.

19. Eleganter Oratio ponitur pro antecedente: ut,

In tempore ad eam veni, quod rerum omnium est primum.—Ter.

Digitized by Google

20. Relativum, inter duo substantiva ejusdem rei sed diversorum generum et numerorum collocatum, ferè cum posteriore concordat: ut,

Homines tuentur illum globum quæ terra dicitur.—Cic.

21. Aliquando relativum concordat cum *personali* pro nomine, quod in *possessivo* subauditur: ut,

Omnes omnia
Bona dicere, et laudare fortunas meas,
Qui gnatum haberem tali ingenio præditum.—Ter.

ubi personale *ego* in possessivo *meas* subauditur.

22. Relativum QUI, primæ vel secundæ personæ appositum, verbum primæ vel secundæ personæ exĭgit: ut,

Ego, quæ Divûm incedo Regina.—Virg.

23. Si Nominativus relativo et verbo interponatur, relativum regitur a verbo, aut ab aliâ dictione, quæ cum verbo in oratione locatur: ut,

Gratia ab officio, quod mora tardat, abest.—Ovid.

NOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

24. Substantiva rei ejusdem (sive *in appositione collocata*) in eodem casu ponuntur: ut,

Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.—Ovid.

GENITIVUS.

25. GENITIVUS indicat *Subjectum* ad quod res pertinet: ut, *Oratio Ciceronis; Personam*, unde venit: ut, *Vulnus Ulyssi; Causam* ob quam fit; ut, *ereptæ virginis irâ; Qualitatem:* ut, *homo summi ingenii; Objectum* quò tendit: ut, *amor nummi; Quantitatem:* ut, *fossa decem pedum*,

(Gr. Gr §§ 130, 131.)

Digitized by Google

GENITIVUS POST NOMEN.

26. QUUM duo substantiva diversæ significationis concurrunt, posterius in genitivo ponitur: ut,

Crescit amor nummi, quantum ipsa pecunia crescit.—Juv.

27. Adjectivum et pronomen, in neutro genere sine substantivo positum, aliquando genitivum postulat: ut,

Paululum pecuniæ.

28. Sed hæc Adjectiva, *primus, medius, ultimus, extremus, imus, summus, supremus, reliquus, cætĕrus,* cum Substantivis juncta, pro *Parte primâ, mediâ, ultimâ,* etc. poni solent: ut,

Primâ nocte domum claude.—Hor.

29. Ponitur interdum genitivus tantum, priore substantivo per ellipsin subaudito: ut,

Ubi ad Dianæ veneris: sc. *templum.*—Ter.

30. ADJECTIVA quæ desiderium, notitiam, memoriam, timorem significant, atque iis contraria, genitivum exigunt: ut,

Est natura hominum novitatis avĭda.—Plin.

31. ADJECTIVA, quæ ad copiam, egestatemve pertinent, interdum genitivum, interdum ablativum exigunt: ut,

Dives equûm, dives pictaï vestis, et auri.—Virg.

GENITIVUS POST VERBUM.

32. SUM genitivum postŭlat, quoties significat possessionem, officium, signum, partem, aut id quod ad rem quampiam pertĭnet: ut,

Pecus est Melibœi.—Virg.

33. VERBA accusandi, damnandi, absolvendi, et similia, genitivum postulant, vocabulo *crimine* subaudito: ut,

Qui alterum accusat probri (sc. *crimine*) *eum ipsum se intueri oportet.*—Plaut.

Digitized by Google

34. SATĂGO, *misereor*, et *miseresco*, genitivum postulant; sed *miseror* et *commiseror* accusativum: ut,

Is rerum suarum satagit.—Ter.

35. REMINISCOR, *obliviscor*, *memĭni*, *recordor*, genitivum, aut accusativum, admittunt: ut,

Datæ fidei reminiscitur.

36. POTIOR, vel ablativo, vel genitivo, jungitur: ut,

Egressi optatâ potiuntur Troes arenâ.—Virg.

DATIVUS.

37. DATIVUS indicat *objectum*, ad quod vel *nomen* vel *verbum directè refertur*, vel *id cui aliquid fit*, vel *acquiritur*, vel *adimitur*. (Gr. Gr. § 124.)

DATIVUS POST NOMEN.

38. ADJECTIVA quibus commŏdum, incommodum, similitudo, dissimilitudo, propinquitas, distantia, voluptas, submissio, aut relatio ad aliquid significatur, dativum postulant: ut,

Si facis, ut patriæ sit idoneus utilis agris.—Juv.

39. COMMUNIS, *immunis*, *affinis*, et similia, genitivo, et dativo, junguntur: ut,

Commune animantium omnium est.—Cic.

40. COMMODUS, *incommodus*, *utilis*, *inutilis*, *aptus*, cum multis aliis, interdum dativo, et interdum accusativo cum præpositione, junguntur: ut,

Non est aptus equis Ithacæ locus.—Hor.

Digitized by Google

41. VERBALIA in *bilis* accepta passivè, et participalia in *dus*, dativum postulant: ut,

Nulli penetrabilis astro
Lucus iners. — Stat.

DATIVUS POST VERBUM.

42. OMNIA verba regunt dativum ejus *rei*, vel *personæ*, cui aliquid acquiritur, aut adimitur: ut,

Mihi istic nec seritur, nec metitur. — Plaut.

43. VERBA significantia commodum, aut incommodum, regunt dativum: ut,

Non potes mihi commodare, nec incommodare.

44. Excipe *juvo*, *lædo*, *delecto*, et alia quædam, quæ accusativum exigunt: ut,

Non omnes arbusta juvant, humilesque myricæ. — Virg.

45. VERBA certandi et comparandi regunt dativum; ut,

Solus tibi certet Amyntas. — Virg.

46. Interdum vero ablativum regunt cum præpositione *cum*; interdum regunt accusativum cum præpositionibus *ad* et *inter*: ut,

Comparo Virgilium cum Homero.

47. QUÆDAM distandi, et auferendi verba, aliquando dativo junguntur: ut,

Paulum sepultæ distat inertiæ
Celata virtus. — Hor.

48. VERBA dandi et reddendi regunt dativum: ut,

Fortuna multis dat nimis, satis nulli. — Mart.

49. Aliquando accusativum *personæ* cum ablativo *rei*: ut,

Hoc juvenem egregium præstanti munere donat. — Virg.

Digitized by Google

50. VERBA promittendi ac solvendi regunt dativum: ut,
Quæ tibi promitto, ac recipio sanctissimè esse observaturum.—Cic.

51. VERBA imperandi et nuntiandi regunt dativum: ut,
Imperat, aut servit, collecta pecunia cuique.—Hor.

52. Excipe *jubeo, rego, guberno,* quæ accusativum habent: ut,
Pauper eris. Fortem hoc animum tolerare jubebo.—Hor.

53. Excipe *tempero et moderor,* quæ posita pro *modum impono* vel *parco,* dativum, pro *guberno,* accusativum habent: ut,
Temperat ipse sibi—Sol temperat omnia luce.

54 VERBA fidendi et diffidendi regunt dativum: ut,
Utrumque vitium est, nulli credere, et omnibus.—Sen.

55. VERBA obsequendi et repugnandi dativum regunt: ut,
Deo qui obēdit optĭmam offert victĭmam.

56. HÆC verba,

NUBO, VACO, STUDEO, FAVEOQUE, INDULGEO, PARCO,
GRATŬLOR, IGNOSCO, MEDEORQUE, IRASCOR, ADŪLOR,

regunt dativum: ut,
Uxorem ducit vir; nubit sponsa marito.

57. HÆC verba,

EXCUSO, IGNOSCO, PERSUADEO, DEFENDOQUE,
CONDONO, CAVEO, MINOR, INVIDEOQUE, PROBOQUE,

et quædam alia, regunt dativum *personæ* et accusativum *rei:* ut,
Ille Philippo
Excusare laborem, et mercenaria vincla.—Hor.

58. DATIVUM sæpiùs regunt verba composita cum his adverbiis, *benè, satis, malè;* et cum his præpositionibus, *præ, ab, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter:* ut,
Dî tibi benefaciant!—Ter.

Digitized by Google

59. SUM, cum multis aliis, geminum admittit dativum, unum *personæ*, alterum vero *rei*: ut,

Exitio est avidis mare nautis.—Hor.

60. Dativus *rei* eleganter etiam aliis verbis additur: ut,

Virtus neque datur dono, neque accipitur.—Sall.

61. Est ubi hic dativus *tibi* aut *sibi*, aut etiam *mihi*, elegantiæ causâ additur: ut,

Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo.—Ter.

ACCUSATIVUS.

62. ACCUSATIVUS indicat *objectum*, quod directè ab actione patitur.

ACCUSATIVUS POST NOMEN.

63. ACCUSATIVUS *partem* indicans subjicitur verbis, adjectivis, et participiis: ut,

Os humerosque Deo similis. Vultum demissa tacebat.

ACCUSATIVUS POST VERBUM.

64. VERBA transitiva, cujuscunque generis sint, sive activi sive deponentis, exigunt accusativum: ut,

Percontatorem fugito, num garrŭlus idem est.—Hor.

65. VERBA neutra accusativum habent cognatæ significationis: ut,

Longam incomitata videtur
Ire viam.—Virg.

66. SUNT et alia verba cùm neutra tum passiva quæ accusativum post se habent: ut,

Nec vox hominem sonat: O Dea certè.—Virg.

Digitized by Google

67. VERBA rogandi, docendi, cogendi, induèndi, celandi fere duplicem regunt accusativum, alterum *personæ*, alterum verò *rei*: ut,

Pacem te poscimus omnes.—Virg.

68. INFINITIVUS aliquando supplet locum accusativi: ut,

Reddes dulce loqui: reddes ridere decorum.—Hor.

ABLATIVUS.

69. ABLATIVUS indicat *conditionem* vel *qualitatem* rei: *i.e.* numerum, pretium, quantitatem, modum, instrumentum, causam, locum, tempus, et similia.

ABLATIVUS POST NOMEN.

70. ADJECTIVA et substantiva regunt ablativum significantem causam, formam et qualitatem, instrumentum vel modum rei: ut,

Pallidus irâ.

71. DIGNUS, *indignus*, *præditus*, *captus*, *contentus*, *extorris*, *fretus*, *liber*, cum adjectivis *pretium* significantibus, ablativum post se habent: ut,

Curantem quicquid dignum sapiente bonoque est.—Hor.

72. Horum nonnulla interdum poeticè genitivum admittunt: ut,

Magnorum indignus avorum.—Virg.

73. OPUS et *usus* ablativum exigunt, præsertim participii passivi: ut,

Nunc animis opus, Æneа. Nunc viribus usus.—Virg.

Digitized by Google

COMPARATIVA ET SUPERLATIVA.

74. COMPARATIVA, nisi exponantur per *quàm*, ablativum exigunt: ut,

Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum: i. e. *quàm aurum, quàm virtutes sunt.* — Hor.

75. Nomina cum comparantur per *quàm* in eodem utrinque casu ponuntur: ut,

Ennius major fuit natu quàm Plautus et Nævius.

76. QUAM sæpe intelligitur, non *exprimitur*, post *amplius, plus,* et *minus:* ut,

Noctem non amplius unam. — Virg.

77. ABLATIVUS post comparativa aliquando eleganter omittitur: ut,

Adolescentia fervidior est: i. e. *justo.*

78. TANTO, *quanto hoc, eo,* et *quo,* cum quibusdam aliis, quæ mensuram excessûs significant; item, *ætate* et *natu,* comparativis et superlativis sæpe junguntur: ut,

Tanto pessimus omnium poeta,
Quanto tu optimus omnium patronus. — Catull.

ABLATIVUS POST VERBUM.

79. QUODVIS verbum admittit ablativum sine præpositione, significantem *instrumentum,* aut *causam,* aut *modum* actionis: ut,

Hi jacŭlis, illi certant defendere saxis. — Virg.

80. ABLATIVO autem *agentis* præfigitur *a* vel *ab* præpositio: ut,

Aque lupo teneræ dente petuntur oves.

Digitized by Google

81. ABLATIVO *modi* interdum additur præpositio, plerumque cum adjectivo: ut,

Magnâ cum diligentiâ scripsit.—Cic.

82. QUIBUSDAM verbis subjicitur nomen *pretii* in ablativo casu: ut,

Spem pretio non emo.—Ter.

83. VALOR rei in *genitivo*, PRETIUM verò, quod vel penditur vel poscitur, in *ablativo* ponitur: ut,

Quanti emptæ? Parvo. Quanti ergo? Octussibus.—Hor.

84. VILI, *paulo, minimo, magno, nimio, plurimo, dimidio, duplo*, per se sæpe ponuntur, subauditâ voce *pretio* vel *spatio:* ut,

Vili venit triticum.

85. FLOCCI, *nauci, nihili, pili, assis, hujus, teruncii*, verbis æstimandi adduntur: ut,

Ego illum flocci non pendo, neque hujus facio, qui te pili æstimat.

86. Excipiuntur hi genitivi sine substantivis positi: *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, tantīdem, quantīvis, quantīlĭbet, quanticunque*, &c.: ut,

Tanti eris aliis, quanti tibi fueris.—Cic.

87. VERBA abundandi, implendi, onerandi, instruendi, abstinendi, et his diversa, ablativo junguntur: ut,

Amore abundas, Antĭpho.—Ter.

88. Ex quibus quædam nonnunquam genitivum regunt: ut,

Desine mollium tandem querelarum.—Hor.

89. Fungor, *fruor, utor, vescor, dignor, muto, communico, supersedeo*, ablativo junguntur: ut,

Officiis vitæ bene fungĭtor: hoc erit, uti
Præsenti vitâ, præteritâque frui.

Digitized by Google

90. MEREOR et MEREO, cum adverbiis *bene, male, melius, pejus, optime, pessime,* ablativo junguntur cum præpositione *de:* ut,

De me semper benè meritus est.

91. QUIBUSLIBET verbis et participiis additur ABLATIVUS ABSOLUTE sumptus: ut,

Imperante Augusto, natus est Christus; imperante Tiberio, crucifixus.

DE MENSURA, TEMPORE, ET LOCO.

92. MENSURA, PONDUS, vel QUANTITAS rei post adjectiva et adverbia in accusativo ponitur, post substantiva in genitivo: ut,

Perpetuæ fossæ quinos pedes altæ. — Cæs.

93. ORDINALIA etiam sæpissimè temporis et spatii mensuram exprimunt: ut,

Mithridates ab illo tempore annum jam tertium et vicesimum regnat. — Cic.

TEMPUS.

94. Quæ significant *partem temporis* in ablativo frequentiùs ponuntur: ut,

Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit. — Plin.

95. Quæ autem *durationem temporis* significant in accusativo ferè ponuntur: ut,

Pericles quadraginta annos præfuit Athenis. — Cic.

SPATIUM LOCI.

96. SPATIUM, *extensio,* et *progressio,* post verba in accusativo, *distantia* vel in accusativo vel ablativo ponitur: ut,

Millia tum pransi tria repimus. — Hor.

Digitized by Google

Nomina Locorum.

97. Omne verbum admittit genitivum oppidi nominis, in quo fit actio; modo primæ vel secundæ declinationis, et singularis numeri sit: ut,

Quid Romæ faciam? mentiri nescio.—Juv.

98. Hi genitivi, *humi, domi, militiæ, belli*, oppidorum sequuntur formam: ut,

Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi. — Cic.

99. Verum si oppidi nomen pluralis duntaxat numeri, aut tertiæ declinationis fuerit, in ablativo ponitur: ut,

Colchus, an Assyrius; Thebis nutritus, an Argis.—Hor.

100. Verbis significantibus *motum ad locum* ferè additur nomen loci in accusativo sine præpositione: ut,

Concessi Cantabrigiam ad capiendum ingenii cultum.

101. Ad hunc modum utimur *domus* et *rus:* ut,

Ite domum saturæ, venit Hesperus, ite, capellæ.—Virg.

102. Nominibus regionum, montium, villarum præfiguntur ferè præpositiones: ut,

Ilium in Italiam portans.—Virg.

103. Insulæ autem oppidorum ferè regimen sequuntur: ut,

Cretæ considĕre jussit Apollo.—Virg.

104. Verbis significantibus *motum a loco* ferè additur nomen loci in ablativo sine præpositione: ut,

Nisi antè Româ profectus esses, nunc eam relinqueres.

PRONOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

105. Genitivi *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, ponuntur, cùm *persona* significatur: ut,

Languet desiderio tui.

Digitized by Google

106. MEUS, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, ponuntur, cùm *actio* vel *possessio rei* significatur: ut,

Favet desiderio tuo.

107. GENITIVI *nostri*, *vestri*, ponuntur, cùm OBJECTUM, quo quid *tendit*; *nostrûm* vero et *vestrûm*, cùm SUBJECTUM, quo quid *constat*, significatur: ut,

Uterque vestrûm sit memor nostri, precor.

108. HÆC POSSESSIVA, *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, et *vester*, hos genitivos post se recipiunt, *ipsius*, *solius*, *unius*, *duorum*, *trium*, *omnium*, *plurium*, *paucorum*, *cujusque*, et genitivos participiorum et adjectivorum, qui ad primitivum subauditum referuntur: ut,

Dixi meâ unius operâ rempublicam esse salvam.—Cic.

109. SUI et *suus* reciproca sunt, et semper reflectuntur ad id quod in sententiâ præcipuum est: ut,

Petrus nimium admiratur se, parcit erroribus suis.

110. HÆC demonstrativa, *hic*, *is*, *iste*, *ille*, sic distinguuntur: *hic*, *mihi* proximum demonstrat; *is*, de quo mentionem fecimus; *iste*, eum qui apud *te* est; *ille*, eum qui ab *utroque* remotus est.

111. HIC et *ille*, cum ad duo anteposita referuntur, *hic* plerumque ad posterius, *ille* ad prius refertur: ut,

Quocunque aspicias, nihil est, nisi pontus et aer,
Nubibus hic tumidus, fluctibus ille minax.—Ovid.

112. Pronominibus IDEM et ALIUS adjiciuntur *qui*, *ac*, *et*; et Græcè dativus: ut,

Vesta eadem est quæ terra.—Ovid.

113. QUI interrogativum adjectivè, *Quis* substantivè adhibetur: ut,

Qui rex tum Romæ *fuit?* *Quis* tum Romæ *fuit Rex?*

Digitized by Google

114. His vocibus, *si, nisi, num, ne, ubi, unde, quo, quanto,* subjicitur pronomen *quis:* ut,

Si mala condiderit in quem quis carmina, jus est Judiciumque.—Hor.

115. Omnes voces *indefinitè* positæ, quales sunt, *qui, quis, quantus, quotus, qualis, ut, ubi, cur,* &c., subjunctivum postulant: ut,

Novit namque omnia vates,
Quæ sint, quæ fuerint, quæ mox ventura trahantur.—Virg.

116. Qui post *is sum,* vel cùm in *talis ut* resolvi potest, subjunctivum exigit: ut,

Non tu is es, qui, quid sis, nescias.—Cic.

117. Qui, cum jungitur verbis *sum, habeo, reperio,* vel adjectivis *dignus, aptus, idoneus,* ferè subjunctivum exigit: ut,

Est mihi purgatam crebrò qui personet aurem.—Hor.

118. Qui, *causam* significans, subjunctivum exigit: ut.

Stultus es, qui huic credas.

119. Qui, cùm in *ut ego, quamvis ego, quoniam ego, ut tu, quamvis tu, quoniam tu, ut ille, quamvis ille, quoniam ille,* et similia, resolvi potest, subjunctivum exigit: ut,

Major sum, quàm cui possit fortuna nocere: i.e. *ut mihi.*

VERBA PASSIVA.

120. Passivis additur ablativus agentis, sed antecedente *a* vel *ab* præpositione; et interdum dativus: ut,

Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis.—Hor.

121. Cæteri casus manent in passivis, qui fuerunt activorum: ut,

Accusaris a me furti. Habeberis ludibrio.

Digitized by Google

122. VAPŬLO, *veneo, liceo, exŭlo, fio,* passivam significationem habent: ut,

A præceptore vapulabis.

VERBA IMPERSONALIA.

123. Hæc impersonalia, *interest* et *rĕfert,* quibuslibet genitivis junguntur, præter ablativos *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ,* et *cujâ:* ut,

Interest magistratûs tueri bonos.

124. Adduntur et hi genitivi, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, quanticunque, tantidem:* ut,

Tanti refert honesta agere.

125. DATIVUM postulant impersonalia acquisitivè posita: ut, *placet, libet, licet, liquet:* ut,

A Deo nobis benefit.

126. Hæc autem impersonalia *juvat, decet, delectat, oportet, fallit, fugit, præterit,* regunt accusativum: ut,

Me juvat ire per altum.

127. His, *attinet, pertinet, spectat,* propriè additur præpositio *ad:* ut,

Me vis dicere quod ad te attinet.—Ter.

128. His impersonalibus *pœnitet, tædet, miseret, miserescit, pudet, piget,* subjicitur accusativus personæ, cum genitivo rei: ut,

Si ad centesimum vixisset annum, senectutis eum suæ non pœniteret.—Cic.

129. Verba, quæ in activâ voce *dativum* exigunt, ferè in passivâ fiunt IMPERSONALIA: ut,

Non bene ripæ
Creditur.—Virg.

Digitized by Google

VERBA INFINITA.

130. Verbis quamplurimis, præsertim *sensum* et *affectum* exprimentibus, ut *audio, dico, sentio, credo, promitto, simulo, spero,* (quibus Anglicè adjicitur *that,*) adduntur Verba Infinita: ut,

Audiet cives acuisse ferrum.—Hor.

131. Item verbis *potentiam, desiderium, officium, consuetudinem* exprimentibus: ut,

Possum multa tibi veterum præcepta referre.—Virg.

132. Item participiis et adjectivis *qualitatem* denotantibus, et substantivis adduntur Verba Infinita: ut,

Erat tum dignus amari.—Virg.

133. Sed Verbis *intentionem* significantibus; item verbis *rogandi, imperandi, monendi, hortandi, tentandi,* postponitur *subjunctivus* cum *ut* conjunctione (et interdum *quo*) in *affirmando,* et cum *ne* in *negando* et *prohibendo:* ut,

Ut vivas, vigila.—Hor.

134. Excipe *jubeo* et *veto,* quæ accusativum cum infinitivo exigunt: ut,

Græcus Aristippus, servos qui projicere aurum
In mediâ jussit Libyâ.—Hor.

135. Participium interdum fungitur vice infinitivi: ut,

Sensit medios delapsus in hostes.—Virg.

136. Ponuntur interdum sola, per ellipsin, verba Infinita: ut

Hinc spargere voces
In vulgum ambiguas, et quærere conscius arma.—Virg.

(ubi subauditur *incipiebat*).

137. Infinitivi sæpe ponuntur pro substantivis: ut,

Scribendi rectè sapere est et principium et fons.—Hor.

Digitized by Google

GERUNDIA ET SUPINA.

138. GERUNDIA et SUPINA regunt casus suorum verborum: ut,

Efferor studio patres vestros videndi.—Cic.

I. GERUNDIA.

139. GERUNDIA in *di* eandem quam genitivi constructionem habent, et pendent a quibusdam tum substantivis, tum adjectivis: ut,

Cecropias innatus apes amor urget habendi.—Virg.

140. GERUNDIA in *do* eandem quam dativi et ablativi, constructionem obtinent: ut,

Hic aqua potando benè commoda, panis edendo.

141. CUM significatur necessitas, ponuntur Gerundia in *dum* et eandem quam nominativi constructionem obtinent: ut,

Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.—Juv.

142. GERUNDIA in *dum*, eandem etiam quam accusativi constructionem obtinent: ut,

Locus ad agendum amplissimus.—Cic.

143. PARTICIPIA in *dus*, i. e. verborum quæ accusativum regunt, sæpe gerundiorum loco adhibentur et appellantur GERUNDIVA: ut,

Ad accusandos homines duci præmio, proximum latrocinio est.—Cic.

II. SUPINA.

144. SUPINUM in *um* activè significat, et sequitur verbum, aut participium, significans motum ad locum: ut,

Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ.—Ovid.

145. SUPINUM in *u* passivè significat, et sequitur nomina adjectiva: ut,

Mala tactu vipĕra.—Virg.

Digitized by Google

PARTICIPIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

146. PARTICIPIA regunt casus verborum a quibus derivantur: ut,

Duplices tendens ad sidera palmas,
Talia voce refert.—Virg.

147. PARTICIPIIS passivæ vocis additur interdum dativus, præsertim si exeunt in *dus:* ut

Magnus civis obit, et formidatus Othoni.—Juv.

148. PARTICIPIA, cum fiunt nomina, sæpè genitivum admittunt: ut,

Alieni appĕtens, sui profusus.—Sall.

149. PARTICIPIA interdum supplent locum substantivi: ut,

Ante conditam condendamve urbem.—Liv.

150. EXOSUS et *perosus* activè significant, et accusativum exigunt: ut

Exosus ad unum
Trojanos.—Virg.

151. NATUS, *prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus, edĭtus,* ablativum exigunt, et sæpè cum præpositione: ut,

Bona bonis prognata parentibus.—Ter.

ADVERBIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

152. EN et *ecce,* demonstrandi adverbia, nominativo frequentiùs junguntur, accusativo rariùs: ut,

En Priamus.—Virg.

Digitized by Google

153. QUÆDAM adverbia loci, temporis, et quantitatis, genitivum ad mittunt—

LOCI; ut, *ubi, ubinam, nusquam, eo, longè, quo, ubivis, hucvine, &c.: ut,*

Ubi gentium?— Hor.

TEMPORIS; ut, *nunc, tunc, tum, interea, pridie, postridie,* &c.: ut,

Nihil tunc temporis amplius, quàm flere, poteram.

QUANTITATIS; ut, *parum, satis, abundè,* &c.: ut,

Sat habet favitorum semper, qui recte facit.—Plaut.

154. QUÆDAM casus admittunt nominum unde deducta sunt: ut,

Summum bonum dicitur a Stoicis, convenienter naturæ vivere. —Cic.

155. ADJECTIVA, in neutro genere, ponuntur adverbialiter: ut,

Torva tuens. Dulce ridens. Sole recens orto.

156. ADVERBIIS diversitatis et similitudinis: ut, *æque, juxta, pariter, perinde, aliter, contra, secus,* adduntur particulæ *ac, atque:* ut,

In medias res

Non secus ac notas auditorem rapit.—Hor.

QUIBUS VERBORUM MODIS QUÆDAM CONGRUANT ADVERBIA ET CONJUNCTIONES.

157. AN, NE NUM, dubitativè et indefinitè posita, subjunctivo junguntur: ut,

Nihil refert fecerisne an persuaseris.

158. DUM pro *dummodo* (*provided that*), *dum, quoad* et *donec* pro *quousque* (*until*) de futurâ re, subjunctivum postulant: ut,

Dum prosim tibi.—Ter.

159. CONJUNCTIONES *quin, quominus,* subjunctivum, post negationem vel prohibitionem vel impedimentum, exigunt: ut,

Nihil est, quin malè narrando possit depravarier.—Ter.

Digitized by Google

160. Ut pro *quàm* (*how!*), *postquam*, *sicut*, et *quomodo*, indicativo jungitur: cum autem *quanquam*, *utpote*, vel *finalem causam* denotat, subjunctivo: ut,

Ut sæpe summa ingenia in occulto latent!

161. Post verba timendi, ut negat, ne affirmat: ut,

O Puer, ut sis
Vitalis, metuo, et majorum ne quis amicus
Frigore te feriat.—Hor.

PRÆPOSITIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

162. Præpositio in compositione eundem ferè casum regit, quem et extra compositionem regebat: ut,

Detrudunt naves scopulo.—Virg.

163. Verba composita cum *a*, *ab*, *ad*, *con*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *in*, nonnunquam *repetunt* easdem præpositiones cum suo casu extra compositionem, idque eleganter: ut,

Abstinuerunt a vino.

164. In, pro *erga*, *contra*, *ad*, et *supra*, accusativum exigit: ut,

Accipit in Teucros animum, mentemque benignam.—Virg.

165. Per *adjurandi* ferè interpositâ voce a suo nomine separatur: ut,

Per te Deos oro.—Hor.

Per ego has lacrymas, dextramque tuam, te
Oro.—Virg.

166. Sub, cum ad *tempus* refertur, accusativo ferè jungitur: ut,

Sub idem tempus: i.e. *circa*, vel *per idem tempus.*—Liv.

167. Super, pro *ultra*, accusativo; pro *de*, ablativo apponitur: ut,

Super et Garamantas et Indos
Proferet imperium.—Virg.

Digitized by Google

168. Tenus ablativo et singulari et plurali jungitur: ut,

Pube tenus. — *Pectoribus tenus.* — Ovid.

Et semper casum suum sequitur: ut,

Crurum tenus. — Virg.

169. Cum *postponitur* pronominibus *me, te, se, nobis, vobis;* et aliquando *quî, quibus:* ut, *mecum, tecum, quicum, quibuscum.*

INTERJECTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

170. O, exclamantis, nominativo, accusativo, et vocativo, jungitur: ut,

O festus dies hominis! — Ter.

171. Heu et *proh,* nunc nominativo, nunc accusativo, junguntur: ut,

Heu pietas, heu prisca fides! — Virg.

172. Hei et *væ* dativo junguntur: ut,

Hei mihi, quod nullis amor est medicabilis herbis! — Ovid.

Digitized by Google

PROSODIA.

DEFINITIONES.

1. Prosodia est pars Grammaticæ, quæ quantitatem syllabarum docet.

2. Tempus est syllabæ proferendæ mensura.

Tempus breve sic notatur: ut, *Dŏmĭnŭs.* Longum autem sic: ut, *cōntrā;* commune sic ⏑¯.

3. Pes duarum syllabarum pluriumve constitutio est, ex certâ Temporum observatione.

Spondeus duabus longis fit: ut, *vīrtūs.*

Dactylus unâ longâ et brevibus duabus: ut, *scrībĕrĕ.*

4. Scansio est legitima versûs in pedes distributio.

Scansioni accidunt figuræ, *Synalœpha, Ecthlipsis, Synærĕsis, Diærĕsis* (συναλοιφὴ, ἔκθλιψις, συναίρεσις, διαίρεσις).

5. Synalœpha est elisio vocalis vel diphthongi in *fine dictionis,* ante alteram vocalem vel diphthongum in initio sequentis: ut,

Sera nimis vit' est crastĭna,—viv' hodie.—Mart.

pro *vita. vive.* Sic.

Dardanid' infensi pœnas cum sanguine poscunt.—Virg.

pro *Dardanidæ.*

Heu et *o* nunquam intercipiuntur.

Digitized by Google

6. ECTHLIPSIS est quoties litera M cum suâ vocali perimitur, proximâ dictione a vocali exorsâ: ut,

Monstr' horrend' informe ingens, cui lumen ademptum.
—Virg.

pro *monstrum, horrendum.*

7. CRASIS sive SYNÆRĔSIS est duarum syllabarum in unam contractio: ut,

Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta.—Virg.

quasi scriptum esset *alvāria.*

8. DIÆRĔSIS est, ubi ex unâ syllabâ fiunt quæ: ut,

Debuerant fusos evolüisse suos.—Ov. Ep.

evolüisse pro *evolvisse.* Sic *silüæ* aliquando pro *silvæ.*

9. VERSUS HEROICUS, qui *Hexameter* etiam dicitur, constat sex pedibus seu metris; quintus locus dactylum, sextus spondeum sibi vindicat; reliqui hunc vel illum, prout volumus; ut,

Tĭtўrĕ, | tū pătŭ|læ rĕcŭ|bāns sūb |tēgmĭnĕ | fāgī.|—Virg.

Reperitur aliquando, post dactylum, spondeus etiam in quinto loco: ut,

Cārā Dĕ|ūm sŏbŏ | lēs māg|nūm Jŏvĭs | īncrē | mēntūm.|—Virg.

10. VERSUS ELEGIACUS, qui et *Pentameter* vocatur, duabus constat partibus; quarum prior duos pedes, vel dactylicos, vel spondiacos, habet, cum syllabâ longâ; altera etiam duos pedes, sed dactylicos tantùm, cum syllabâ: ut,

Rēs ēst sōlĭcĭ|tī ‖ plēnă tĭ|mōrĭs ă|mor.‖—Ov. Ep.

11. ULTIMA VERSUS SYLLABA habetur *communis,* hoc est, vel longa vel brevis esse potest.

Digitized by Google

12. VOCALIS ANTE DUAS CONSONANTES, vel duplicem consonantem. in eâdem dictione, *positione* longa est: ut, *vēntus, āxis, cūjus.*

13. Si consonans priorem dictionem claudat, sequente item consonante incipiente, vocalis præcedens *positione* longa est: ut,

Majōr sūm, quām cui possīt fortuna nocere:

ubi syllabæ *jor, sum, quam,* et *sit,* positione longæ sunt.

14. Vocalis brevis ante mutam, sequente liquida *l,* et præcipue *r,* communis redditur: ut *pātris, volŭcris.* Sed non in compositis, ut *āb-luo, ōb-ruo:* et longa *naturâ* nunquam corripitur, ut *mātris,* a *māter; ācris,* ab *ācer; salūbris, a salūber.*

15. VOCALIS ANTE VOCALEM, et ante literam *h,* in eâdem dictione, brevis est: ut *Dĕus, mĕus, tŭus, pĭus, nĭhil.*

16. Excipias genitivos in *ius:* ut *unĭus illius,* &c., ubi *i* communis reperitur, licet in *alterĭus* et *utrĭus* semper sit brevis, in *alīus,* (i. e. *alĭĭus*) et fortasse *solius,* semper longa.

17. Excipiendi sunt etiam genitivi antiqui in *ai,* ut *aulāi,* genitivi et dativi quintæ declinationis, ubi *e* inter geminum *i* longa fit: ut, *faciēi;* alioqui non: ut, *rĕi, spĕi, fidĕi;* aliquando et vocativi *Cāi, Pompēi.*

Sed apud Ennium,

Vir bonus, haud magnâ cum re, sed plenu' fidēi.

18. *Fi* in *fio* longa est, nisi sequuntur *e* et *r* simul: ut, *fĭerem, fĭeri.*

Omnia jam fīunt, fĭeri quæ posse negabam.

19. *Dīus, āer, ēheu* primam syllabam habent longam; *Dĭana communem.*

Ohe interjectio priorem syllabam communem habet.

Digitized by Google

20. VOCALIS ANTE VOCALEM in Græcis dictionibus subinde longa est: ut,

Dicite Pierides; Respice Lāerten; Vertitur āër.

21. ET in possessivis Græcis; ut, *Ænēia nutrix; Rhodopēius Orpheus; ignis Achāicus.*

DIPHTHONGUS OMNIS apud Latinos *longa* est: ut, *aurum, neuter, musæ:* nisi sequente *vocali;* ut *prĕire, prĕustus, prĕamplus:* aliquando et in fine dictionis: ut, *Insulĕ Ionio.*

22. COMPOSITA, simplicium suorum quantitatem ferè sequuntur: ut, a *lĕgo, lĕgis, perlĕgo; lēgo, lēgas, allēgo;* ab *æquus, inīquus;* a *pŏtens, impŏtens;* a *sōlor, consōlor.* (Vide § 122.)

23. Excipe *intereā, posteā, anteā.*

24. Excipiuntur item hæc brevia a longis enata: *dejĕro, pejĕro,* a *jūro: innŭba, pronŭba,* a *nūbo.*

25. DERIVATIVA ferè primitivorum suorum quantitatem habent: ut *ămator, ămicus, ămabilis,* primâ brevi, ab *ămo.*

Digitized by Google

SYNTAXIS.

CONCORDANTIA PRIMA.

First Concord.

NOMINATIVUS ET VERBUM. *Nominative Case and Verb.*

1. VERBUM personale *a Verb personal* concordat *agrees* cum nominativo *with its nominative case* numero *in number* et *and* personâ *in person:* ut *as,* Crastĭna vita *to-morrow's life* est *is* nimis sera *too late,* vive *live* hodie *to-day.*

2. Nominativus *the nominative* Pronominum *of pronouns* rarò *rarely* exprimitur *is expressed,* nisi *except* gratiâ *for the sake* distinctionis *of distinction* aut *or* emphasis *of emphasis:* ut *as,* Vos damnâstis, *you have condemned:* quasi *as if* dicat *he were saying,* (*you and*) præterea nemo *no one else.*

3. Cum *when* Persōnæ *the persons* sunt *are* diversæ *diverse,* Verbum *the verb* sequitur *follows* digniorem *the more worthy:* ut *as,* Si *if* tu *you* et *and* Tullia *Tullia* valetis *are in good health,* est *it is* bene *well;* ego *I* et *and* Cicero *Cicero* bene valemus *are in good health.*

4. Verba Substantiva *Verbs Substantive,* ut *as,* sum *I am,* fio *I become,* existo *I exist;* Verba passiva Vocandi *verbs passive of calling,* ut *as,* nomĭnor *I am named,* appellor *I am called,* dicor *I am said,* vocor *I am styled,* nuncŭpor *I am denominated;* et *and* similia iis, *the like, to those,* ut *as,* videor *I seem,* appareo *I appear,* audio *I hear,* habeor *I am thought,* existĭmor *I am accounted,* habent *have* eosdem *the*

Digitized by Google

same casus *cases* utrinque *on each side:* ut *as,* Deus *God* est *is* summum *the chief* bonum *good.*

5. Item *also* ferè *almost* omnia *all* Verba *Verbs* admittunt *admit* adjectivum *an adjective* post *after* se *themselves,* quod *which* concordat *agrees* cum *with* substantivo *the substantive* verbi *of the verb,* casu *in case,* genere *in gender,* et *and* numero *in number:* ut *as,* Crede *believe* omnem diem *that every day* diluxisse *has broke* tibi *upon you* supremum *the last.*

6. Verba *verbs* affirmandi *of affirming* et *and* sciendi *of knowing* habent *have* interdum *sometimes* utrinque *on each side of them* nominativum *a nominative,* quùm *when,* quod *what* quis *any one* affirmat *affirms,* affirmat *he affirms* id *that* non de alio quoquam *not of any other person* sed *but* de ipso *of himself:* ut *as,* Vir bonus *a good* (*man*) et *and* sapiens *wise* ait *says* esse *that he is* paratus *prepared* dignis *for the deserving.*

7. Verba *the verbs* videor *I seem,* dicor *I am said,* audior, *I am heard,* et similia *and the like,* solent *are wont* usurpari *to be used* multo sæpius *much oftener* personaliter *personally* quàm *than* impersonaliter *impersonally:* ut *as,* Homerus *Homer* traditur *is reported* fuisse *to have been* temporibus *in the times* Lycurgi *of Lycurgus.*

8. Aliquando *sometimes* Oratio *the Sentence* est *is* nominativus *the nominative* verbo *to the verb:* ut *as,* Didicisse *to have learnt* fideliter *faithfully* ingenuas *ingenuous* artes *arts* emollit mores *softens manners,* nec *nor* sinit *suffers* (*them*) esse *to be* feros *savage.*

9. Aliquando *sometimes* adverbium *an adverb* cum genetivo *with a genitive:* ut *as,* Partim *part* (*partly*), virorum *of the men* ceciderunt *fell* in bello *in the war.*

Digitized by Google

10. Quum *when* alterum Verbum *another Verb* præcedit *precedes* (et *and* præcipuè *particularly* si *if* sit *it be* verbum sentiendi *a verb of feeling,*) Verbum *the Verb* ponitur *is put* in infinitivo *in the infinitive* et *and* nomen *the noun* in accusativo *in the accusative:* ut *as,* Gaudeo *I rejoice* te rediisse *that you have returned* incolumen *safe and sound.*

11. Verbum *a Verb* positum *placed* inter duos nominativos *between two nominatives* diversorum numerorum *of different numbers,* potest concordare *can agree* cum *with* alterutro *either of them:* ut *as,* Iræ *the quarrels* amantium *of lovers* est *is* integratio *the renewal* amoris *of love.*

12. Nomen multitudinis *a noun of number* singulare *singular* aliquando *sometimes* jungitur *is joined* verbo *to a verb* plurali *plural:* ut *as,* Pars *part of them* abiere *have departed.*

CONCORDANTIA SECUNDA. *Second Concord.*

SUBSTANTIVUM ET ADJECTIVUM. *Substantive and Adjective.*

13. Adjectiva *adjectives,* participia *participles,* et *and* pronomina *pronouns,* concordant *agree* cum substantivo *with their substantive* genere *in gender,* numero *in number,* et *and* casu *in case:* ut *as,* Rara avis *a bird rare* in terris *on the earth* que *and* simillima *very like* nigro cygno *to a black swan.*

14. Cum *when* substantiva *the substantives* sunt *are* diversi generis *of different gender,* adjectivum *the adjective* sequitur *follows* genus *the gender,* et *and* aliquando *sometimes* numerum *the number,* dignioris *of the more worthy:* ut *as,*

Digitized by Google

Liber et Libera *Liber and Libera* nati sunt *were born* Cerĕre *of Ceres.*

15. Aliquando *sometimes* Oratio *the Sentence* supplet *supplies* locum *the place* substantivi *of the substantive,* adjectivo *the adjective* posito *being put* in neutro genere *in the neuter gender:* ut *as,* Audito *it having been heard,* regem *that the king* proficisci *is going* Doroberniam *to Dover.*

16. Aliquando *sometimes* infinitivus *the infinitive* ponitur *is put* pro substantivo *for the substantive:* ut *as,* Tuum *your* scire *knowledge* est *is* nihil *nothing.* Illud *that* triste *sad* vivere *living* nostrum *of ours.*

17. Adjectivum *the adjective* sæpe *often* ponitur *is placed* in neutro genere *in the neuter gender* sine substantivo *without a substantive:* ut as, Est *it is* stultum *foolish* parcere *to spare* perituræ chartæ *the perishable paper.*

CONCORDANTIA TERTIA. *Third Concord.*

Relativum et Antecedens. *Relative and Antecedent.*

18. Relativum *the relative* concordat *agrees* cum antecedente *with the antecedent,* genere *in gender,* numero *in number,* et *and* personâ *in person:* ut *as,* Quis *who* est *is* bonus vir *a good man?* Qui *he who* servat *keeps* consulta patrum *the decrees of the senators,* qui *who* (servat *observes*) leges *laws* juraque *and rights.*

19. Eleganter *elegantly,* Oratio *the Sentence* ponitur *is put* pro antecedente *for the antecedent:* ut *as,* Veni *I came* ad

Digitized by Google

eam *to her* in tempore *in time,* quod *which* est *is* primum *the principal* omnium rerum *of all things.*

20. Relativum *a relative,* collocatum *placed* inter duo substantiva *between two substantives* ejusdem rei *of* (*referring to*) *the same thing* sed *but* diversorum generum et numerorum *of different genders and numbers,* ferè *usually* concordat *agrees* cum posteriore *with the latter* (*substantive*) : ut as, Homines *men* tuentur *occupy* illum globum *that globe* quæ *which* dicitur *is called* terra *the earth.*

21. Aliquando *sometimes* relativum *the relative* concordat *agrees* cum personali pronomine *with the personal pronoun,* quod *which* subauditur *is understood* in possessivo *in the possessive* (*pronoun*): ut *as,* Omnes *all* (*began*) dicere to *speak* omnia bona *all good things* et *and* laudare *to praise* meas fortunas *my fortunes,* qui *who* (*because I*) haberem *had* gnatum *a son* præditum *endued* tali ingenio *with such a disposition ;* ubi *where* personale *the personal pronoun* ego *I* subauditur *is understood* in possessivo *in the possessive* meas *my.*

22. Relativum *the relative* qui *who,* appositum *put in apposition* primæ vel secundæ personæ *with the first or second person* exĭgit *requires* verbum *a verb* primæ vel secundæ personæ *of the first or second person :* ut *as,* Ego *I,* quæ *who* incedo *march* Regina *queen* Divûm *of the gods.*

23. Si *if* Nominativus *a Nominative* interponatur *is put between* relativo *the relative* et verbo *and the verb,* relativum *the relative* regitur *is governed* a verbo *by the verb* aut *or* ab aliâ dictione *by some other word,* quæ *which* locatur *is placed* cum verbo *with the verb* in oratione *in the sentence :* ut *as,* Gratia *grace* abest *is absent* ab officio *from a favour,* quod *which* mora *delay* tardat *retards.*

Digitized by Google

NOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

The Construction of Nouns.

24. Substantiva *two substantives* ejusdem *of (referring to) the same* rei *thing,* (sive *or* collocata *placed* in appositione *in apposition*) ponuntur *are put* in eodem casu *in the same case:* ut *as,* Opes *riches* effodiuntur *are dug up,* irritamenta *the incitements* malorum *of ills.*

GENITIVUS. The Genitive.

25. Genitivus *the genitive* indicat *indicates* subjectum *the subject* ad quod *to which* res *a thing* pertinet *belongs:* ut *as,* Oratio Ciceronis *An oration of Cicero;* Personam (*or*) *the person,* unde *from whom* venit *it comes:* ut *as,* Vulnus *a wound* Ulyssi *of (from) Ulysses;* Causam (*or*) *the cause* ob quam *for which* fit *it is done:* ut, *as,* irâ *through anger* virginis *for the virgin* ereptæ *snatched away;* Qualitatem (*or*) *its quality:* ut, *as,* homo *a man* summi ingenii *of highest ability;* Objectum (*or*) *the object* quò *whither* tendit *it tends:* ut, as, Amor *love* nummi *of money;* Quantitatem (*or*) *the quantity:* ut, *as,* fossa *a ditch* decem pedum *of ten feet.*

GENITIVUS post NOMEN.—*The Genitive after a Noun.*

26. Quum *when* duo substantiva *two substantives* diversæ significationis *of different sense* concurrunt *come together,* posterius *the latter* ponitur *is put* in genitivo *in the genitive:* ut *as,* Amor *The love* nummi *of money* crescit *increases,* quantum *as much as* pecunia *money* ipsa *itself* crescit *increases.*

Digitized by Google

27. Adjectivum et pronomen *An adjective and pronoun,* positum *put* in neutro genere *in the neuter gender* sine substantivo *without a substantive,* aliquando *sometimes* postulat *requires* genitivum *a genitive:* ut *as,* paululum *a little* pecuniæ *of money.*

28. Sed *but* hæc Adjectiva *these* (*following*) *Adjectives,* primus *first,* medius *midst,* ultimus *last,* extremus *extreme,* imus *lowest,* summus *highest,* supremus *upmost,* reliquus *remaining,* cætĕrus *rest,* juncta *joined* cum Substantivis *with Substantives,* solent *are wont* poni *to be put* pro *for* primâ *the first,* mediâ *the middle,* ultimâ *the last* parte *part* etc. ut *as,* Primâ *at the first fall* nocte *of night* claude *shut* domum *your house.*

29. Interdum *sometimes* genitivus *a genitive* ponitur *is put* tantum *alone,* priore substantivo *the former substantive* subaudito *being understood* per ellipsin *by ellipsis:* ut *as,* Ubi *when* veneris *you shall have come* ad Dianæ *to Diana's,* sc. *that is,* templum *temple.*

30. Adjectiva *adjectives* quæ *which* significant *signify* desiderium *desire,* notitiam *knowledge,* memoriam *memory,* timorem *fear,* atque *and* iis contraria *their contraries,* exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive:* ut *as,* Natura *the nature* hominum *of men* est *is* avĭda *greedy* novitatis *of novelty.*

31. Adjectiva *adjectives,* quæ *which* pertinent *belong* ad copiam *to plenty,* ve *or* egestatem *to want,* interdum *sometimes* exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive,* interdum *sometimes* ablativum *an ablative:* ut *as,* Dives *rich* equûm *in horses,* dives *rich* pictaï vestis *in embroidered apparel* et *and* auri *gold.*

Digitized by Google

GENITIVUS post VERBUM.—*The Genitive after the Verb.*

32. Sum *the verb* sum *I am* postŭlat *requires* genitivum *a genitive,* quoties *as often as* significat *it signifies* possessionem *possession,* officium *duty,* signum *sign,* partem *part,* aut *or* id *that* quod *which* pertinet *belongs* ad quampiam rem *to anything:* ut *as,* Pecus *the cattle* est *belongs to* Melibœi *Melibœus.*

33. Verba *verbs* accusandi *of accusing,* damnandi *of condemning,* absolvendi *of acquitting,* et *and* similia *the like,* postulant *require* genitivum *a genitive,* vocabulo *the word* crimine *charge* subaudito *being understood:* ut *as,* Qui *he who* accusat *accuses* alterum *another* probri *of vice* (sc. *that is* crimine *with the charge*) oportet *it behoves* eum *him* intueri *to examine* ipsum se *himself.*

34. Satăgo *I am busy,* misereor *I commiserate* et *and* miseresco *I have pity on,* postulant *require* genitivum *the genitive;* sed *but* miseror et commiseror *the accusative;* ut *as,* Is satagit *He is busied* suarum rerum *in his own concerns..*

35. Reminiscor *I remember,* obliviscor *I forget,* memini *I recollect,* recordor *I recall to mind,* admittunt *admit* genitivum, aut accūsativum *a genitive or accusative:* ut *as,* Reminiscitur *he remembers* datæ fidei *his given troth.*

36. Potior *to take possession of,* jungitur *is joined* vel ablativo, vel genitivo *to an ablative, or genitive:* ut *as,* Troes *the Trojans* egressi *having disembarked* potiuntur *gain possession of* optatâ arenâ *the wish for sand.*

DATIVUS. The Dative.

37. Dativus *the Dative* indicat *indicates* objectum *the object,* ad quod *to which* vel nomen vel verbum *a noun or*

Digitized by Google

verb refertur *is referred* directè *directly*, vel *or* id *that* cui *to which* aliquid *anything* fit *is done* vel *or* acquiritur *acquired by*, vel *or* adimitur *taken away from.*

DATIVUS post NOMEN.—*The Dative after a Noun.*

38. Adjectiva *adjectives* quibus *by which* commŏdum *advantage*, incommodum *disadvantage*, similitudo *likeness*, dissimilitudo *unlikeness*, propinquitas *nearness*, distantia *distance*, voluptas *pleasure*, submissio *submission*, aut *or* relatio *relation* ad aliquid *to something*, significatur *is signified*, postulant *require* dativum *a dative:* ut *as*, Si facis *if you render*, ut *that* sit *he be* idoneus *beneficial* patriæ *to his country* utilis *useful* agris *to the fields.*

39. Communis *common*, immunis *exempt*, affinis *akin*, et *and* similia *the like*, junguntur *are joined* genitivo, et dativo, *to the genitive and dative:* ut *as*, Est *it is* commune *common* omnium animantium *to all animals.*

40. Commodus *suited*, incommodus *ill suited*, utilis *useful*, inutilis *useless*, aptus *fit*, cum multis aliis *with many others*, junguntur *are joined* interdum *sometimes* dativo *to the dative*, et *and* interdum *sometimes* accusativo *to the accusative* cum præpositione *with a preposition:* ut *as*, Locus *the country* Ithacæ *of Ithaca* non est *is not* aptus *suited* equis *for horses.*

41. Verbalia in bilis *verbal adjectives in* bilis accepta *taken* passivè *passively*, et *and* participalia in dus *participials in* dus, postulant *demand* dativum *a dative:* ut *as*, Penetrabilis *penetrable*, nulli astro *by no star*, iners lucus *an inert grove.*

Digitized by Google

DATIVUS post VERBUM.—*The Dative after a Verb.*

42. Omnia verba *all verbs* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative* ejus rei *of the thing,* vel personæ *or person,* cui *which* aliquid *anything* acquiritur *is gained by* aut *or* adimitur *taken away from:* ut *as,* Istic *in that place of yours,* nec seritur *it is neither sown,* nec metitur *nor reaped* mihi *for me.*

43. Verba *verbs* significantia *signifying* commodum *advantage,* aut incommodum *or disadvantage,* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative:* ut *as,* Non potes *you are not able* commodare mihi *to do me good,* nec *nor* incommodare mihi *to do me harm.*

44. Excipe *except,* juvo *I delight,* lædo *I hurt,* delecto *I I delight,* et *and* quædam *certain* alia *others,* quæ *which* exigunt *require* accusativum *an accusative:* ut *as,* Arbusta *shrubs,* que *and* humiles myricæ *low tamarisks,* non juvant *do not please* omnes *all.*

45. Verba certandi *verbs of contending* et *and* comparandi *of comparing* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative:* ut *as,* Amyntas solus *let Amyntas alone* certet *contend* tibi *with you.*

46. Vero *but* interdum *sometimes* regunt *they govern* ablativum *an ablative,* cum præpositione cum *with the preposition cum;* interdum *sometimes* regunt *they govern* accusativum *an accusative* cum præpositionibus *with the prepositions* ad et inter, *to and between:* ut *as,* Comparo *I compare* Virgilium *Virgil* cum Homero *with Homer.*

47. Quædam verba *some verbs* distandi *of differing* et *and* auferendi *of taking away,* aliquando *sometimes* junguntur *are joined* dativo *to a dative:* ut *as,* Celata virtus *concealed*

Digitized by Google

virtue distat *differs* paulum *little* sepultæ inertiæ *from buried indolence.*

48. Verba dandi *verbs of giving* et *and* reddendi *of rendering* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative:* ut *as,* Fortuna *Fortune* dat *gives* nimis *too much* multis *to many,* satis *enough* nulli *to no one.*

49. Aliquando *sometimes* accusativum *an accusative* personæ *of the person* cum *with* ablativo *an ablative* rei *of the thing:* ut *as,* Donat *he presents* egregium juvenem *the noble youth* hoc præstanti munere *with this distinguished gift.*

50. Verba *verbs* promittendi *of promising* ac *and* solvendi *of paying* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative:* ut *as,* Quæ *which* (*things*) promitto tibi *I promise to you,* ac *and* recipio *take upon myself,* esse observaturum *that I will observe* sanctissimè *most religiously.*

51. Verba *verbs* imperandi *of commanding* et *and* nuntiandi *of announcing* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative:* ut *as,* Pecunia collecta *money collected* imperat *rules,* aut *or* servit *serves* cuique *every one.*

52. Excipe *except* jubeo *I command,* rego *I rule,* guberno *I govern,* quæ *which* habent *have* accusativum *an accusative:* ut *as,* Eris *you will be* pauper *poor.* Jubebo *I will order* fortem animum *my strong mind* tolerare *to bear* hoc *this.*

53. Excipe *except* tempero *I temper* et *and* moderor *I moderate,* quæ *which* (*when*) posita *put* pro *for* impono modum *I impose bounds to,* vel *or* parco *I spare,* habent *have* dativum *a dative,* pro (*when*) *for* guberno *I govern* habent *have* accusativum *an accusative:* ut *as,* Temperat ipse *he controls* sibi *himself*—Sol *the sun* temperat *tempers* omnia *all things* luce *with his light.*

Digitized by Google

54. Verba *verbs* fidendi *of trusting* et *and* diffidendi *of distrusting* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative:* ut *as,* Utrumque *both* est *is* vitium *a fault,* credere *to trust* nulli *nobody,* et *and* (credere *to trust*) omnibus *every one.*

55. Verba *verbs* obsequendi *of obeying* et *and* repugnandi *of resisting* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative:* ut *as,* Qui *he who* obēdit *obeys* Deo *God,* offert *offers* optĭmam victĭmam *the best victim.*

56. Hæc verba *these, verbs* nubo *I marry* (*said of a woman*), vaco *I have leisure,* studeo *I study,* faveo *I favour,* que *and* indulgeo *I indulge,* parco *I spare,* gratŭlor *I congratulate,* ignosco *I forgive,* que*and* medeor *I heal,* irascor *I am angry,* adūlor *I flatter,* regunt *govern* dativum, *a dative:* ut *as,* Vir *the husband* ducit *marries* uxorem *a wife;* sponsa *the bride* nubit *marries* marito *a husband.*

57. Hæc verba *these verbs,* excuso *I plead as an excuse,* ignosco *I pardon,* persuadeo *I persuade,* que *and* defendo *I defend,* condono *I pardon,* caveo *I take heed,* minorque *and I threaten,* invideoque *and I envy,* probo *I approve,* et *and* quædam alia *some others,* regunt govern dativum *a dative* personæ *of the person* et *and* accusativum *an accusative* rei *of the thing:* ut *as,* Ille *he* (*began*) excusare *to plead as an excuse* Philippo *to Philip,* laborem *his labour* et *and* mercenaria vincla *his mercantile engagements.*

58. Verba *verbs* composita *compounded* cum his adverbiis *with these adverbs,* benè *well,* satis *enough,* malè *ill;* et *and* cum his præpositionibus *with these prepositions,* præ, ab, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter, sæpiùs *usually* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative:* ut *as,*

Dî benefaciant *may the gods bless* tibi *you!*

Digitized by Google

59. Sum *I am,* cum multis aliis *with many other (verbs),* admittit *admits* geminum dativum *a double dative,* unum *one* personæ *of the person,* vero *and* alterum *another* rei *of the thing:* ut *as.* Mare *the sea* est *is* exitio *the ruin* avidis nautis *of greedy sailors.*

60. Dativus *a dative* rei *of the thing* etiam *also* additur *is added* eleganter *elegantly* aliis verbis *to other verbs:* ut *as,* Virtus *virtue* neque *neither* datur *is given* neque *nor* accipitur *received* dono *as a gift.*

61. Est *there is* ubi *where* hic dativus *this dative* tibi aut sibi tibi *or* sibi, aut *or* etiam *also* mihi, additur *is added* causâ *for the sake* elegantiæ *of elegance:* ut *as,* Jugulo *I stab* hunc *this man,* suo sibi gladio *with his own sword.*

ACCUSATIVUS. Accusative.

62. Accusativus *the accusative* indicat *indicates* objectum *the object* quod *which* patitur *suffers* directè *directly* ab actione *from an action.*

Accusativus post Nomen.—*Accusative after a Noun.*

63. Accusativus *an accusative* indicans *indicating* partem *a part* subjicitur *is added* verbis *to verbs,* adjectivis *adjectives,* et *and* participiis *participles:* ut *as,* Os *in face* que *and* humeros *in shoulders,* similis *like* deo *a god.* Demissa *downcast* vultum *in her look,* tacebat *she held her peace.*

Accusativus post Verbum.—*Accusative after a Verb.*

64. Verba transitiva *verbs transitive,* cujuscunque generis *of whatever kind* sint *they are,* sive *whether* activi *active* sive

Digitized by Google

or deponentis *deponent,* exigunt *require* accusativum *an accusative:* ut *as,* Fugito *fly thou* percontatorem *from an inquisitive man,* nam *for* idem *the same* est *is* garrŭlus *a prattler.*

65. Verba neutra *verbs neuter* habent *have* accusativum *an accusative* cognatæ significationis *of cognate signification:* ut *as,* Videtur *she seems* ire *to be going* incomitata *unaccompanied* longam viam *a long journey.*

66. Sunt *there are* et *too* alia verba *other verbs* cùm neutra tum passiva *both neuter and passive* quæ *which* habent *have* accusativum *an accusative* post se *after them:* ut *as,* Nec *nor* vox sonat *does your voice sound* hominem *a man* (*like a human creature*): O Dea, *O a goddess* certè *doubtless.*

67. Verba *verbs* rogandi *of asking,* docendi *of teaching,* cogendi *of forcing,* induendi *of clothing,* celandi *of hiding,* ferè *generally* regunt *govern* duplicem accusativum *a double accusative,* alterum personæ *one of the person,* alterum verò rei *another of the thing:* ut *as,* Omnes poscimus *we all implore* pacem *peace* te *of you.*

68. Infinitivus *an infinitive* aliquando *sometimes* supplet *supplies* locum *the place* accusativi *of the accusative:* ut *as,* Reddes *you will restore* (*to me*) loqui *to speak* (*the speaking*) dulce *sweetly:* reddes *you will restore* ridere *to smile* decorum *gracefully.*

ABLATIVUS. Ablative.

69. Ablativus *the ablative* indicat *indicates* conditionem *the condition* vel *or* qualitatem *the quality* rei *of a thing:* i. e. *that is* numerum *number,* pretium, *price,* quantitatem *quantity*

Digitized by Google

modum *manner,* instrumentum *instrument,* causam *cause,* locum *place,* tempus *time,* et *and* similia *the like.*

ABLATIVUS POST NOMEN. *Ablative after a Noun.*

70. Adjectiva et substantiva *adjectives and substantives* regunt *govern* ablativum *an ablative* significantem *signifying* causam *the cause,* formam et qualitatem *form and quality,* instrumentum vel modum *instrument or manner* rei *of a thing*: ut *as,* Pallidus *pale* irâ *through anger.*

71. Dignus *worthy,* indignus *unworthy,* præditus *endued,* captus *deprived,* contentus *content,* extorris *banished,* fretus *relying on,* liber *free,* cum *with* adjectivis *adjectives* significantibus *signifying* pretium *price,* habent *have* ablativum *an ablative* post se *after them:* ut *as,* Curantem *caring for* quicquid *whatever* est *is* dignum *worthy* sapiente *of a wise man* que *and* bono *a good.*

72. Nonnulla *some* horum *of these* interdum *sometimes* admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive* poeticè *poetically,* i. e. *in poetry:* ut *as,* Indignus *unworthy* magnorum avorum *of his great ancestors.*

73. Opus *need* et usus *use* exigunt *require* ablativum *an ablative,* præsertim *especially* participii passivi *in the participle passive:* ut *as,* Nunc *now* opus *there is need* animis *of courage,* Ænea *O Æneas.* Nunc *now* usus *there is demand* viribus *for strength.*

COMPARATIVA ET SUPERLATIVA. *Comparatives and superlatives.*

74. Comparativa *comparatives,* nisi *unless* exponantur *they are expressed* per quàm *by* quàm, exigunt *require* ablativum *an ablative:* ut *as,* Argentum *silver* est *is* viliùs *cheaper*

Digitized by Google

auro *than gold,* aurum *gold* virtutibus *than virtues:* i. e. *that is* quàm aurum *than gold* (*is*), quàm virtutes sunt *than virtues are.*

75. Nomina *nouns* cum *when* comparantur *compared* per quàm *by means of* quàm, ponuntur *are put* utrinque *on both sides* in eodem casu *in the same case:* ut *as,* Ennius *Ennius* fuit *was* major natu *older* quàm *than* Plautus et Nævius *Plautus and Nævius.*

76. Quàm *than* sæpe *often* intelligitur *is understood,* non exprimitur *not expressed,* post *after* amplius *more,* plus *more,* et *and* minus *less:* ut *as,* Non amplius *not more* unam noctem *than one night.*

77. Ablativus *the ablative* post comparativa *after a comparative* aliquando *sometimes* eleganter *elegantly* omittitur *is omitted:* ut *as,* Adolescentia *youth* est *is* fervidior *more ardent,* i. e. *that is* justo *than is right.*

78. Tanto *by so much,* quanto *by as much,* hoc *by this,* eo *by that,* et *and* quo *by which,* cum quibusdam aliis *with some others,* quæ *which* significant *signify,* mensuram *the measure* excessûs *of excess;* item *also* ætate *by age* et *and* natu *by birth,* sæpe *often* junguntur *are joined* comparativis et superlativis *to comparatives and superlatives:* ut *as,* Tanto *by so much* pessimus *the worst* poeta *poet* omnium *of all,* quanto *by as much as* tu *you* (*are*) optimus patronus *the best advocate* omnium *of all.*

Ablativus post Verbum.—*Ablative after the Verb.*

79. Quodvis verbum *every verb* admittit *admits* ablativum *an ablative* sine præpositione *without a preposition* signifi-

Digitized by Google

cantem *signifying* instrumentum *the instrument* aut causam *or cause*, aut modum *or manner* actionis *of an action:* ut *as*, Hi *these* certant *strive* defendere *to defend* jacŭlis *with darts*, illi *those* saxis *with stones.*

80. Autem *but* ablativo *to the ablative* agentis *of the agent* præfigitur *is prefixed* a vel ab: ut *as*, Que *and* teneræ oves *the tender sheep* petuntur *are assailed* a lupo *by the wolf* dente *with his tooth.*

81. Ablativo *to the ablative* modi *of the manner* interdum *sometimes* additur *is added* præpositio *a preposition*, plerumque *usually* cum adjectivo *with an adjective:* ut *as*, Scripsit *he wrote* cum magnâ diligentiâ *with great diligence.*

82. Quibusdam verbis *to certain verbs* subjicitur *is subjoined* nomen pretii *a noun of price* in ablativo casu *in the ablative case:* ut *as*, Non emo *I do not purchase* spem *hope* pretio *with a price.*

83. Valor *the value* rei *of an object* ponitur *is put* in genitivo *in the genitive*, verò *but* pretium *the price* quod *which* vel *either* penditur *is paid* vel *or* poscitur *is asked* (*for it*) ponitur *is put* in ablativo *in the ablative:* ut *as*, Emptæ *purchased* quanti *for what?* Parvo *a small sum.* Quanti *how much* ergo *then?* Octussibus *eight asses.*

84. Vili *at a cheap rate*, paulo *at a little*, minimo *at the least*, magno *at much*, nimio *too much*, plurimo *very much*, dimidio *by half*, duplo *by double*, ponuntur *are put*, sæpe *often* per se *by themselves*, voce *the word* pretio *price* vel *or* spatio *space* subauditâ *being understood:* ut *as*, Triticum *wheat* venit *sells* vili *cheap* (i. e. *at a cheap rate*).

85 Flocci *at a lock of wool*, nauci *at a bad nut*, nihili *at*

Digitized by Google

nothing, pili *at a hair*, assis *at a penny*, hujus *at this price*, teruncii *at three ounces*, adduntur *are added* verbis *to verbs* æstimandi *of valuing:* ut *as*, Ego *I* non pendo illum *do not esteem him* flocci *at a lock of wool*, neque *nor* facio *do I value* (*him*) hujus *at this*, qui *who* æstimat *esteems* te *you* pili *at a hair.*

86. Hi genitivi *these genitives* excipiuntur *are excepted* positi *put* sine substantivis *without substantives:* tanti *at so much*, quanti *at how much*, pluris *at more*, minoris *at less*, tantīdem *at the same price*, quantīvis, quantŭlĭbet *at whatever price you like*, quanticunque &c. *at whatever price:* ut *as*, Eris *you will be* tanti *of so much value* aliis *to others*, quanti *as* fueris *you shall have been* tibi *to yourself.*

87. Verba *verbs* abundandi *of abounding*, implendi *of filling*, onerandi *of loading*, instruendi *of equipping*, abstinendi *of abstaining*, et *and* diversa *those differing* his *from these*, junguntur *are joined* ablativo *to an ablative:* ut *as*, Abundas *you abound* amore *in love*, Antĭpho *O Antipho.*

88. Ex quibus *of which* (*verbs*) quædam *certain* nonnunquam *sometimes* regunt *govern* genitivum *a genitive:* ut *as*, Desine *cease* tandem *at length* mollium querelarum *your soft complaints.*

89. Fungor *I discharge*, fruor *I enjoy*, utor *I use*, vescor *I eat*, dignor *I count worthy*, muto *I change*, communico *I communicate*, supersedeo *I supersede*, junguntur *are joined* ablativo *to an ablative:* ut *as*, Fungĭtor *discharge thou* bene *well* officiis *the duties* vitæ *of life:* hoc *this* erit *will be*, uti *to use* præsenti vitâ *thy present life*, que *and* frui *to enjoy* præteritâ *thy past* (*life*).

90. Mereor *I deserve or merit* et *and* mereo *I deserve*, cum adverbiis *with the adverbs* benè *well*, malè *ill*, meliùs

Digitized by Google

better, pejus *worse,* optime *best,* pessime *worst,* junguntur *are joined* ablativo *to an ablative* cum præpositione de *with the preposition* de: ut *as,* Meritus est *he deserved* benè *well* semper *always* de me *of me.*

91. Quibuslibet *to any* verbis *verbs* et *and* participiis *participles* additur *is added* ablativus *an ablative* sumptus *taken* absolutè *absolutely:* ut *as,* Augusto (*when*) *Augustus* imperante *was emperor,* Christus *Christ* natus est *was born:* Tiberio (*when*) *Tiberius* imperante *was emperor* crucifixus (*he was*) *crucified.*

DE MENSURA, TEMPORE, ET LOCO.

Concerning Measure, Time, and Place.

92. Mensura *measure,* Pondus *weight,* vel *or* Quantitas *quantity* rei *of a thing* post *after* adjectiva *adjectives* et *and* adverbia *adverbs,* ponitur *is put* in accusativo *in the accusative,* post *after* substantiva *substantives* in genitivo *in the genitive:* ut *as,* Perpetuæ fossæ *continuous ditches* quinos pedes altæ *each five feet high.*

93. Ordinalia *ordinals* etiam *too,* sæpissimè *very often* exprimunt *express* mensuram *the measure* temporis *of time* et *and* spatii *of space:* ut *as,* Mithridates *Mithridates* regnat *is reigning* jam *now* tertium et vicesimum annum *the three and twentieth year* ab illo tempore *from that time.*

TEMPUS. *Time.*

94. Quæ *the* (*nouns*) *which* significant *signify* partem temporis *part of time* ponuntur *are put* frequentiùs *more*

Digitized by Google

frequently in ablativo *in the ablative:* ut *as,* Nemo mortalium *no mortal* sapit *is wise* omnibus horis *at all hours.*

95. Autem *but* quæ *they which* significant *signify* durationem temporis *duration of time* ferè *usually* ponuntur *are put* in accusativo *in the accusative:* ut *as,* Pericles *Pericles* præfuit *was at the head of affairs* Athenis *at Athens* quadraginta annos *for forty years.*

SPATIUM LOCI. *Space.*

96. Spatium *space,* extensio *extent,* et *and* progressio *progress,* post verba *after verbs* ponitur *is put* in accusativo *in the accusative,* distantia *distance* ponitur *is put* vel *either* in accusativo *in the accusative* vel *or* ablativo *in the ablative:* ut *as,* Tum *then* pransi *having dined* repimus *we crawl* tria millia *three miles.*

NOMINA LOCORUM.—*Names of Places.*

97. Omne verbum *every verb* admittit *admits* genitivum *a genitive* nominis *of the name* oppidi *of a town,* quo *in which* actio *an action* fit *takes place;* modo *provided* sit *it* (*the town*) *be* primæ vel secundæ declinationis *of the first or second declension* et *and* singularis numeri *of the singular number:* ut *as,* Quid *what* faciam *shall I do* Romæ *at Rome?* nescio *I know not* mentiri *to lie.*

98. Hi genitivi *these genitives,* humi *on the ground,* domi *at home,* militiæ *in war,* belli *in war,* sequuntur *follow* formam *the regimen* oppidorum *of towns:* ut *as,* Arma *arms* foris

Digitized by Google

abroad sunt *are* parvi *of little use,* nisi *unless* est *there is* consilium *counsel* domi *at home.*

99. Verum *but* si *if* nomen *the name* oppidi *of the town* fuerit *be* duntaxat *only* pluralis numeri *of the plural number,* aut *or* tertiæ declinationis *of the third declension,* ponitur *it is put* in ablativo *in the ablative:* ut *as,* Colchus *a Colchian,* an *or* Assyrius *an Assyrian,* nutritus *bred* Thebes *at Thebes,* an *or* Argis *at Argi.*

100. Verbis *to verbs* significantibus *signifying* motum ad locum *motion to a place* ferè *usually* additur *is added* nomen loci *the name of the place* in accusativo *in the accusative* sine præpositione *without a preposition:* ut *as,* Concessi *I went* Cantabrigiam *to Cambridge* ad capiendum *to get* cultum ingenii *cultivation of my mind.*

101. Ad hunc modum *in this manner* utimur *we use* domus *home* et *and* rus *the country:* ut *as,* Ite domum *go home* saturæ *full,* Hesperus *evening* venit *is coming,* ite *go home,* capellæ *O she-goats.*

102. Nominibus *to names* regionum *of countries,* montium *of mountains,* villarum *of country-houses* ferè *generally* præfiguntur *are prefixed* præpositiones *prepositions:* ut *as,* Portans *carrying* Ilium *Troy* in Italiam *into Italy.*

103. Autem *but* insulæ *islands* ferè *usually* sequuntur *follow* regimen *the regimen* oppidorum *of towns:* ut *as,* Apollo *Apollo* jussit *ordered* (*us*) considĕre *to settle* Cretæ *at Crete.*

104. Verbis *to verbs* significantibus *signifying* motum a loco *motion from a place* ferè *usually* additur *is added* nomen loci *the name of the place* in ablativo *in the ablative* sine præpositione *without a preposition:* ut *as,* Nisi *unless* profectus

Digitized by Google

esses *you had set out* antè *before* Româ *from Rome,* relinqueres *you would be leaving* eam *it* nunc *now.*

CONSTRUCTIO PRONOMINUM.

Construction of Pronouns.

105. Genitivi *the genitives* mei *of me,* tui *of thee,* sui *of him,* nostri *of us,* vestri *of you,* ponuntur *are put* cùm *when* persona *a person* significatur *is meant:* ut *as,* Languet *he pines* desiderio *for regret* tui *of you.*

106. Meus *my,* tuus *thy,* suus *his,* noster *our,* vester *your,* ponuntur *are put,* cùm *when* actio *an action* vel *or* possessio *possession* rei of a thing significatur *is signified:* ut *as,* Favet *he favours* tuo desiderio *your desire.*

107. Genitivi *the genitives* nostri *of us,* vestri *of you,* po nuntur *are used,* cùm *when* Objectum *the Object* quo *at which* quid *a thing* tendit *aims* significatur *is signified;* verò *but* (*the genitives*) nostrûm *of us* et *and* vestrûm *of you* (ponuntur *are used*) cùm *when* Subjectum *the Subject* quo *of which* quid *a thing* constat *consists* (significatur *is signified*): ut *as,* Uterque vestrûm *let each of you,* precor *I pray,* sit memor *be mindful* nostri *of us.*

108. Hæc possessiva *these possessives,* meus *my,* tuus *thine,* suus *his own,* noster *ours,* et *and* vester *yours* (*said of plural*), recipiunt *take* hos genitivos *these genitives* post se *after themselves,* ipsius *of himself,* solius *of one alone,* unius *of one,* duorum *of two,* trium *of three,* omnium *of all,* plurium *of more,* paucorum *of few,* cujusque *of each,* et *and* genitivos *the genitives* participiorum *of participles* et *and* adjectivorum *of adjectives* qui *which* referuntur *are referred* ad primitivum *to the primitive* subauditum *understood:* ut *as,* Dixi *I de-*

Digitized by Google

clared rempublicam *the republic* esse *to be* salvam *safe* meâ operâ *by my exertions* unius *alone*.

109. Sui *of himself* et *and* suus *his* sunt *are* reciproca *reciprocals*, et *and* semper *always* reflectuntur *are reflected* ad id *to that* (*thing*) quod *which* est *is* præcipuum *the most important* in sententiâ *in the sentence:* ut *as*, Petrus *Peter* admiratur se *admires himself* nimium *too much*, parcit *he spares* suis erroribus *his own errors*.

110. Hæc demonstrativa *these demonstrative* (*pronouns*) hic, is *this*, iste *that*, distinguuntur *are distinguished* sic *thus:* hic demonstrat *indicates* proximum *the nearest person* mihi *to me;* is (*indicates*) de quo *of whom* fecimus mentionem *we have made mention;* iste (*indicates*) eum *him* qui *who* est *is* apud *near* te *you;* ille (*indicates*) eum *him* qui *who* est *is* remotus *removed* ab utroque *from both of us*.

111. Hic *this* et *and* ille *that* cum *when* referuntur *they are referred* ad duo *to two* (*things*) anteposita *placed before*, hic *this* plerumque *generally* refertur *is referred* ad posterius *to the latter* (*of them*) ille *that* ad prius *to the former* (*of them*): ut *as*, Quocunque *whithersoever* aspicias *you may look* est *there is* nihil *nothing*, nisi *but* pontus *sea* et *and* aer *air;* hic *the latter* tumidus *swelling* nubibus *with clouds*, ille *the former* minax *threatening* fluctibus *with waves*.

112. Pronominibus *to the pronouns* idem *the same* et *and* alius *another* adjiciuntur *are added* qui *who*, ac *and* et *and;* et *and* Græcè *as in Greek* dativus *a dative:* ut *as*, Vesta *Vesta* est *is* eadem *the same* quæ *as* terra *the earth*.

113. Interrogativum *the interrogative* qui *who* adhibetur *is used* adjectivè *adjectively*. Quis *who* (adhibetur *is used*) substantivè *substantively:* ut *as*, Qui rex *what king* fuit *was there* tum *then* Romæ *at Rome?* Quis *who* fuit *was* tum *then* rex *king* Romæ *at Rome?*

Digitized by Google

114. His vocibus *to these words,* si *if,* nisi *except,* num *whether* ne *lest,* ubi *where,* unde *whence,* quo *whither,* quanto *how much,* subjicitur *is added* pronomen quis *the pronoun* quis: ut *as,* Si *if* quis *any* condiderit *shall have made* mala carmina *libellous verses* in quem *against any one,* est *there is* jus *law,* que *and* judicium *a trial.*

115. Omnes voces *all words* positæ *put* indefinitè *indefinitely,* quales sunt *such as are,* qui, quis *who,* quantus *how great,* quotus *what in order or number,* qualis *what kind,* ut *how,* ubi *where,* cur *why,* &c., postulant *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive:* ut *as,* Namque *for* vates *the prophet* novit *knows* omnia *all things,* quæ sint *that are,* quæ fuerint *that were,* quæ trahantur *that follow* mox *soon* ventura *about to come.*

116. Qui *who* post *after* is sum, *I am the man* vel *or* cùm *when* potest *it can* resolvi *be resolved* in *into* talis ut *such as,* exigit *requires* subjunctivum *a subjunctive:* ut *as,* Non tu es *you are not* is *such a one* qui *that* nescias *you do not know* quid sis *what you are.*

117. Qui *who* cum *when* jungitur *it is joined* verbis *to the verbs* sum *I am,* habeo *I have,* reperio *I find,* vel *or* adjectivis *to the adjectives* dignus *worthy,* aptus *apt,* idoneus *fit,* ferè *usually* exigit *requires* subjunctivum *a subjunctive:* ut *as,* Est mihi *I have* qui *one* (*such as*) personet *sounds* crebrò *often* purgatam aurem *into my purged ear.*

118. Qui *who* significans *signifying* causam *the cause,* exigit *requires* subjunctivum *a subjunctive:* ut *as,* Es stultus *you are foolish,* qui *who* credas *believe* huic *him.*

119. Qui *who,* cùm *when* potest resolvi *it can be resolved* in *into* ut ego *that I,* quamvis ego *though I,* quoniam ego

Digitized by Google

since I, ut tu *that you,* quamvis tu *though you,* quoniam tu *since you,* ut ille *that he,* quamvis ille *though he,* quoniam ille *since he,* et similia *and the like,* exigit *requires* subjunctivum *a subjunctive:* ut *as,* Sum *I am* major *greater* quàm *than* cui *whom* fortuna *fortune* possit *should be able* nocere *to injure:* i. e. *that is* ut mihi.

VERBA PASSIVA. *Passive Verbs.*

120. Passivis *to passives* additur *is added* ablativus *an ablative* agentis *of the doer,* sed *but* præpositione *with the preposition* a vel ab antecedente a *or* ab *preceeding it;* et *and* interdum *sometimes* dativus *a dative* (additur *is added*): ut *as,* Laudatur *he is praised* ab his *by these,* culpatur *he is blamed* ab illis *by those.*

121. Cæteri casus *the other cases* manent *remain* in passivis *in the passive voice,* qui *which* fuerunt *were* (*governed by the verb*) activorum *in the active:* ut *as,* Accusaris *you are accused* a me *by me* furti *of theft.* Habebĕris *you will be held up* ludibrio *to scorn.*

122. Vapŭlo *I am beaten,* veneo *I am sold,* liceo *I am set up for auction,* exŭlo *I am exiled,* fio *I am made,* habent *have* passivam significationem *a passive signification:* ut *as,* Vapulabis *you will be beaten* a præceptore *by the master.*

IMPERSONALIA VERBA. *Impersonal Verbs.*

123. Hæc impersonalia *these impersonals,* interest *it is the duty* et *and* rĕfert *it is requisite,* junguntur *are joined* quibuslibet genitivis *to any genitives,* præter *and besides* ablativis

Digitized by Google

to the the ablatives meâ *mine,* tuâ *thine,* suâ *his own,* nostrâ *our,* vestra *your,* et *and* cujâ *whose:* ut *as,* Interest *it is the duty* magistratûs *of the. magistrate* tueri *to protect* bonos *the good.*

124. Hi genitivi *these genitives* et *also* adduntur *are added,* tanti *at so much,* quanti *at how much,* magni *at much,* parvi *at little,* quanticunque *at how much soever,* tantidem *at the same:* ut *as,* Tanti refert *of such moment is it* agere *to act* honesta *honestly.*

125. Impersonalia *impersonals* posita *put* acquisitivè *acquisitively* postulant *require* dativum *a dative:* ut *as,* Placet *it pleases,* libet *it is agreeable,* licet *it is lawful,* liquet *it is clear:* ut *as,* Benefit *good is done* nobis *to us* a Deo *by God.*

126. Autem *but* hæc impersonalia *these impersonals* juvat *it delights,* decet *it becomes,* delectat *it delights,* oportet *it behoves,* fallit *it escapes,* fugit *it eludes observation,* præterit *it passes by without notice,* regunt *govern* accusativum *an accusative:* ut *as,* Juvat me *it delights me* ire *to go* per altum *over the deep.*

127. His *to these* attinet *it appertains,* pertinet *it belongs,* spectat *it concerns,* additur *is added* propriè *properly* præpositio ad *the preposition* ad: ut *as,* Vis *you wish* me *me* dicere *to say* quod *what* attinet *appertains* ad te *to you.*

128. His impersonalibus *to the impersonals* pœnitet *it repents,* tædet *it wearies,* miseret *it causes pity,* miserescit *it excites sorrow,* pudet *it shames,* piget *it grieves,* subjicitur *is added* accusativus *an accusative* personæ *of the person,* cum *with* genitivo *a genitive* rei *of the thing:* ut *as,* Si *if* vixisset *he had lived* ad centesimum annum *to his hundredth year,* non pœniteret *it would not repent* eum *him* suæ senectutis *of his old age.*

Digitized by Google

129. Verba *verbs* quæ *which* in activâ voce *in the active voice* exigunt *govern* dativum *a dative*, ferè *generally* in passivâ *in the passive* fiunt *become* impersonalia *impersonals*: ut *as*, Non bene creditur *it is not well trusted* ripæ *to the bank* (*of the river*).

VERBA INFINITA. *Verbs in the Infinitive.*

130. Quamplurimis verbis *to very many verbs* præsertim *especially* exprimentibus *if signifying* sensum *a sense* et *and* affectum *a feeling*, ut *as*, audio *I hear*, dico *I say*, sentio *I feel*, credo *I believe*, promitto *I promise*, simulo *I pretend*, spero *I hope*, (quibus *to which* Anglicè *in English* adjicitur *is added the word that*); Verba Infinita *Verbs Infinitive* adduntur *are added*: ut *as*, Audiet *he will hear* cives *that citizens* acuisse *have whetted* ferrum *the steel*.

131. Item *also* verbis *to verbs* exprimentibus *expressing* potentiam *power*, desiderium *desire*, officium *duty*, consuetudinem *custom*: ut *as*, Possum *I am able* referre *to relate* tibi *to you* multa præcepta *many precepts* veterum *of the ancients*.

132. Item *also* participiis *to participles* et *and* adjectivis *to adjectives* denotantibus *denoting* qualitatem *quality* et *and* substantivis *to substantives* additur *are added* Verba Infinita *Verbs Infinitive*: ut *as*, Erat *he was* tum *then* dignus *worthy* amari *to be loved*.

133. Sed *but* verbis *to verbs* significantibus *signifying* intentionem *intention*; item *also* verbis *to verbs* rogandi *of asking*, imperandi *of ordering*, monendi *of advising*, hortandi

Digitized by Google

of exhorting, tentandi *of trying*, postponitur *is added*, subjunctivus *a subjunctive* cum *with* conjunctione *the conjunction* ut *as*, (et *and* interdum quo *sometimes* quo) in affirmando *in affirming*, et *and* cum *with* ne *lest* in negando *in denying* et *and* prohibendo *prohibiting*: ut *as*, Ut vivas *that you may live*, vigila *watch*.

134. Excipe *except* jubeo *I command* et *and* veto *I forbid*, quæ *which* exigunt *require* accusativum *an accusative* cum infinitivo *with an infinitive*: ut *as*, Græcus Aristippus *the Greek Aristippus*, qui *who* jussit *ordered* servos *his slaves* projicere *to throw down* aurum *his gold* in mediâ Libyâ *in the middle of Libya*.

135. Participium *a participle* interdum *sometimes* fungitur *discharges* vice *the office* infinitivi *of an infinitive*: ut *as*, Sensit *he perceived* delapsus *that he had fallen* in medios hostes *into the midst of the enemy*.

136. Interdum *sometimes* verba Infinita *verbs Infinitive* ponuntur *are placed* sola *alone* per ellipsin *by ellipsis*: ut *as*, Hinc *hence* spargere *to scatter* voces ambiguas *equivocal words* in vulgum *into the crowd*, et *and* conscius *guilty* quærere *to seek* arma *arms* (*against me*) (ubi *where* subauditur *is understood* incipiebat *he began*).

137. Infinitivi *infinitives* sæpe *often* ponuntur *are put* pro substantivis *for substantives*: ut *as*, Sapere *wisdom* est *is* et principium *the head* et fons *and source* rectè scribendi *of writing well*.

GERUNDIA ET SUPINA. *Gerunds and Supines.*

138. Gerundia et Supina *Gerunds and Supines* regunt *govern* casus *the cases* suorum verborum *of their verbs*: ut

Digitized by Google

as, Efferor *I am elated* studio *with the desire* videndi *of seeing* vestros patres *your ancestors.*

I. Gerundia. *Gerunds.*

139. Gerundia in di *gerunds in* di habent *have* eandem constructionem *the same construction* quam genitivi *as genitives,* et *and* pendent *depend* a quibusdam *on certain* tum substantivis, tum adjectivis *both substantives and adjectives:* ut *as,* Innatus amor *an innate love* habendi *of having* urget *urges* Cecropias apes *Cecropian bees.*

140. Gerundia in do *Gerunds in* do obtinent *have* eandem constructionem *the same construction* quam dativi et ablativi *as datives and ablatives:* us *as,* Hic aqua *here is water* benè commoda *well suited* potando *for drinking,* panis *bread* edendo *for eating.*

141. Cum *when* necessitas *necessity* significatur *is signified* gerundia in dum *gerunds in* dum ponuntur *are placed* et *and* obtinent *have* eandem constructionem *the same construction* quam nominativi *as nominatives:* ut *as,* Orandum est *we must pray,* ut *that* sit *there may be* sana mens *a sound mind* (*to us*) in sano corpore *in a sound body.*

142. Gerundia in dum *gerunds in* dum, etiam *also* obtinent *have* eandem constructionem *the same construction* quam accusativi *as accusatives:* ut *as,* Locus *a place* amplissimus *most glorious* ad agendum *for pleading.*

143. Participia in dus *participles in dus,* i. e. *that is* verborum *from verbs* quæ *which* regunt *govern* accusativum *an accusative,* sæpe *often* adhibentur *are used* loco *in the place* gerundiorum *of gerunds* et *and* appellantur *are called* gerundiva *gerundives:* ut *as,* Duci *to be led* præmio *by a reward*

Digitized by Google

ad accusandos homines *to accuse men,* est *is* proximus *next* latrocinio *to larceny.*

II. Supina. *Supines.*

144. Supinum in um, *the supine in* um significat *signifies* activè *actively,* et *and* sequitur *follows* verbum *a verb,* aut *or* participium *a participle* significans *denoting* motum *motion* ad locum *to a place:* ut *as,* Veniunt *they come* spectatum *to see,* veniunt *they come* ut *that* spectentur *they may be seen* ipsæ *themselves.*

145. Supinum in u *the supine in* u, significat *signifies* passivè *passively,* et *and* sequitur *follows* nomina adjectiva *nouns adjective:* ut *as,* Vipĕra *the viper* mala *baneful* tactu *to be touched.*

CONSTRUCTIO PARTICIPIORUM.
Construction of Participles.

146. Participia *participles* regunt *govern* casus *the cases* verborum *of the verbs* a quibus *from which* derivantur *they are derived:* ut *as,* Tendens *stretching* duplices palmas *both his hands* ad sidera *to the stars,* refert *he speaks* talia *such* (*things*) voce *with his voice* (*he speaks thus*).

147. Participiis *to participles* passivæ vocis *of the passive voice* additur *is added* interdum *sometimes* dativus *a dative,* præsertim *especially* si exeunt in dus *if they end in* dus: ut *as,* Magnus civis *a great citizen* obît *is dead,* et *and* formidatus *one to be feared* Othoni *by Otho.*

148. Participia *participles* cum *when* fiunt *they become* nomina *nouns* sæpè *often* admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive:* ut *as,* Appĕtens *greedy* alieni *of what is another's,* profusus *profuse* sui *of his own.*

Digitized by Google

149. Participia *participles* interdum *sometimes* supplent *supply* locum *the place* substantivi *of a substantive:* ut *as,* Ante *before* urbem *the city* conditam *was built* ve *or* condendam *to be built* (*before its building or design*).

150. Exosus et perosus *hating and detesting* significant *signify* activè *actively* et *and* exigunt *require* accusativum *an accusative:* ut *as,* Exosus *hating* Trojanos *the Trojans* ad unum *to a man.*

151. Natus *born,* prognatus *sprung from,* satus *sown,* cretus *produced,* creatus *created,* ortus *derived,* editus *born,* exigunt *require* ablativum *an ablative* et *and* sæpè *often* cum præpositione *with a preposition:* ut *as,* Bona *a good* (*woman*) prognata *sprung* bonis parentibus *from good parents.*

CONSTRUCTIO ADVERBIORUM.

Construction of Adverbs.

152. En et ecce *lo and behold,* adverbia *adverbs* demonstrandi *of showing,* junguntur *are joined* frequentiùs *generally* nominativo *to a nominative,* rariùs *more rarely* accusativo *to an accusative:* ut *as,* En Priamus *Lo Priam.*

153. Quædam adverbia *some adverbs* loci *of place,* temporis *time,* et *and* quantitatis *quantity,* admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive:*

Loci *of place:* ut *as,* Ubi *where,* ubinam *where,* nusquam *nowhere,* eo *thither,* longe *far off,* quo *whither,* ubivis *where you please,* huccine *to this point,* &c.; ut *as,* Ubi gentium *where in the world?*

Temporis *of time:* ut *as,* Nunc *now,* tunc *then,* tum *when,* interea *meanwhile,* pridie *the day before,* postridie *the day*

Digitized by Google

after, &c.: ut *as*, Poteram *I could* (*do*) nihil *nothing* tunc *then* quàm flere *but weep.*

Quantitatis *of quantity:* ut *as*, Parum *too little*, satis *enough*, abundè *abundantly*, &c.: ut *as*, Qui *he who* facit *acts* recte *rightly*, habet *has* semper *always* sat *enough* fautorum *of partizans.*

154. Quædam *some* admittunt *admit* casus *the cases* nominum *of the nouns* unde *whence* sunt *they are* deducta *derived:* ut *as*, Dicitur *it is said* a Stoicis *by the Stoics* (to *be*) summum bonum *the highest good*, vivere *to live* convenienter naturæ *suitably to nature.*

155. Adjectiva *adjectives*, in neutro genere *in the neuter gender*, ponuntur *are placed* adverbialiter *adverbially:* ut *as*, Tuens *looking* torva *sternly.* Ridens *smiling* dulce *sweetly.* Sole *the sun* recens orto *having just risen.*

156 Adverbiis *to adverbs* diversitatis *of difference* et *and* similitudinis *of similitude:* ut *as*, æque *equally* juxta *like*, pariter *like*, perinde *just as*, aliter *otherwise*, contra *against*, secus *otherwise*, adduntur *are added* particulæ *the particles* ac *and* atque *and:* ut *as*, Rapit *he hurries* auditorem *his hearer* in medias res *into the middle of the subject* non secus *not otherwise* ac *than* (*as if*) notas *known.*

QUIBUS MODIS VERBORUM QUÆDAM ADVERBIA ET CONJUNCTIONES CONGRUANT.

With what Moods of Verbs certain Adverbs and Conjunctions agree.

157. An *or*, ne *nor*, num *whether* posita *put* dubitativè *dubitatively* et *and* indefinitè *indefinitely*, junguntur *are* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive:* ut *as*, Refert *it matters* nihil *nothing* ne *whether* feceris *you have done it*, an *or* persuaseris *or recommended it.*

Digitized by Google

158. Dum *till* pro *for* dummodo *provided that*, dum *till*, quoad *until*, et *and* donec *donec* pro *for* quousque *until*, de futurâ re *concerning a future event* postulant *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive*: ut *as*, Dum *provided that* prosim *I may profit* tibi *you*.

159. Conjunctiones *the conjunctions* quin, quominus *quin quominus* exigunt *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive* post *after* negationem *a negation*, vel *or* prohibitionem *a prohibition* vel *or* impedimentum *an impediment*: ut *as*, Est *there is* nihil *nothing*, quin *but that* possit depravarier *it may be spoilt* malè narrando *by ill telling*.

160. Ut *as* pro *for* quàm *how!* postquam *after that*, sicut *as*, et *and* quomodo, *how* jungitur *are joined* indicativo *to an indicative*: autem *but* cum *when* denotat *it signifies* quanquam *although*, utpote *inasmuch as*, vel *or* finalem causam *the final cause* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive*: ut *as*, Ut sæpè *how often* summa ingenia *the highest talents* latent *lie hid* in occulto *in obscurity!*

161. Post *after* verba *verbs* timendi *of fearing* ut *ut* negat *denies* ne *ne* affirmat *affirms*: ut *as*, O puer *O boy*, metuo *I fear* ut sis vitalis *that you may not be long lived*.

CONSTRUCTIO PRÆPOSITIONUM.

Construction of Prepositions.

162. Præpositio *a preposition* in compositione *in composition* ferè *generally* regit *governs* eundum casum *the same case*, quem *which* regebat *it governed* et extra compositionem *out of composition*: ut *as*, Detrudunt *they shove* naves *the ships* scopulo *from the rock*.

163. Verba *verbs* composita *compounded* cum *with*, a, ab *from*, ad *to*, con *with* de e (*from, out,*) ex *out*, in *in*, nonnun-

Digitized by Google

quam *sometimes* repetunt *repeat* easdem præpositiones *the same prepositions* cum suo casu *with their case* extra compositionem *out of composition* que *and* id *this* eleganter *elegantly:* ut *as* Abstinuerunt *they abstained* a vino *from wine.*

164. In, pro *for* erga *therefore,* contra *against,* ad *to,* et *and,* supra *over,* exigit *requirès* accusativum *an accusative:* ut *as,* Accipit *she receives* animum *a* (*good*) *mind,* que *and* benignam mentem *benevolent disposition* in Teucros *towards the Trojans.*

165 Per *by* adjurandi *of adjuring* ferè *generally* separatur *is separated* a suo nomine *from its noun* interpositâ voce *by the interposition of a word* (voce interpositâ *by a word interposed*): ut *as,* Oro *I implore* te *you* per Deos *by the gods.* Ego *I* oro *pray* te *you* per has lacrymas *by these tears,* que *and* tuam dextram *your right hand.*

166. Sub *under,* cum *when* refertur *it is referred* ad tempus *to time,* ferè *generally* jungitur *is joined* accusativo *to an accusative:* ut *as,* Sub idem tempus *near the same time,* i. e. *that is,* circa *about,* vel *or* per idem tempus *at the same time.*

167. Super *above,* pro *for* ultra *beyond,* apponitur *is joined* accusativo *to an accusative;* pro *for* de *from or concerning* ablativo *to an ablative:* ut *as,* Proferet *he will extend* imperium *his sway* super *beyond* et *and* (*both*) Garamantas *the Garamantes* et Indos *and Indians.*

168. Tenus *up to* jungitur *is joined* ablativo *to an ablative* et singulari *both singular* et plurali *and plural:* ut *as,* Tenus *up to* pube *the groin.* Tenus *to* pectoribus *the breasts.* Et *and* sequitur *it follows* semper always suum casum *its case:* ut *as:* Tenus crurum *up to the legs.*

Digitized by Google

169 Cum *with* postponitur *is put after* pronominibus *the pronouns* me, te, se, nobis, vobis: et *and* aliquando *sometimes* (*is put after*) quî, quibus: ut *as,* Mecum, tecum, quicum, quibuscum.

CONSTRUCTIO INTERJECTIONUM.

Construction of Interjections.

170. O, exclamantis *O, of exclaiming* jungitur *is joined* nominativo *to the nominative,* accusativo *to the accusative,* et vocativo *and to the vocative:* ut *as,* O festus dies *O jovial day* hominis *of man.*

171. Heu *alas* et *and* proh *alas* nunc (*now*) *sometimes* junguntur *are joined* nominativo *to a nominative,* nunc *sometimes* accusativo *to an accusative:* ut *as,* Heu pietas *Alas piety!* heu prisca fides *alas ancient faith!*

172. Hei *woe* et *and* væ *woe* junguntur *are added* dativo *to a dative:* ut *as,* Hei mihi *woe is me,* quod *that* amor *love* est *is* medicabilis *curable* nullis herbis *by no herbs!*

Digitized by Google

PROSODIA.

DEFINITIONES. *Definitions.*

1. Prosodia *prosody* est *is* pars Grammaticæ *the part of Grammar,* quæ *which* docet *teaches* quantitatem *the quantity* (*length*) syllabarum *of syllables.*

2. Tempus *time* est *is* mensura *the measure* proferendæ syllabæ *of pronouncing a syllable.*

Breve tempus *a short time* notatur *is marked* sic *thus:* ut *as,* Dŏmĭnŭs *a lord.* Autem *but* longum *a long one* sic *thus:* ut *as,* cōntrā *against;* commune *a common* sic *thus* ‿ .

3. Pes *a foot* est *is* constitutio *the arrangement* duarum *of two* ve *or* plurium *more* syllabarum *syllables,* ex *according to* certâ observatione *a certain observation* temporum *of times.*

Spondeus *a spondee* fit *consists* duabus longis *of two long* (*syllables*) ut *as,* vīrtūs.

Dactylus *a dactyl* unâ longâ *in one long* et *and* duabus brevibus *two short* (*syllables*): ut *as,* scrībĕrĕ *to write.*

4. Scansio *scanning* est *is* legitima distributio *the legitimate distribution* versûs *of the verse* in pedes *into its feet.*

Scansioni *to scanning* accidunt *belong* figuræ *the figures,* Synalœpha, Ecthlipsis, Synærĕsis, Diærĕsis.

Digitized by Google

5. Synalœpha est *is* elisio *the elision* vocalis *of a vowel* vel *or* diphthongi *of a diphthong* in fine *at the end* dictionis *of a word,* ante *before* alteram vocalem *another vowel* vel *or* diphthongum *a diphthong* in initio *at the beginning* sequentis *of one* (*a word*) *following:* ut *as,* Vit' *the life* crastĭna *of to-morrow* est *is* nimis sera *too late,*—viv' hodie *live to-day.* Pro *for* vita *life,* vive *live.* Sic *so,* Infensi Dardanid' *the hostile Dardanidæ* poscunt *demand* pœnas *satisfaction* cum sanguine *with my life.* Pro *for* Dardanidæ.

Heu *alas* et *and* o nunquam *never* intercipiuntur *are cut off.*

6. Ecthlipsis est *is* quoties *as often as* litera M *the letter* M perimitur *is cut off* cum suâ vocali *with its vowel* (*by*) proximâ dictione *the following word* exorsâ *beginning* a vocali *with a vowel:* ut *as,* Horrend' *a horrid,* informe *shapeless* ingens *huge* monstr' *monster* cui lumen *whose eye* ademptum *was taken away:* pro *for* monstrum horrendum.

7. Crasis sive *or* Synærĕsis est *is* contractio *the contraction,* duarum syllabārum *of two syllables* in unam *into one:* ut *as,* Seu *whether* alvearia *the hives* fuerint *would have been* texta *woven* lento vimine *with pliant osier.* Quasi *as if* esset *it had been* scriptum *written* alvāria.

8. Diærĕsis est *is* ubi *when* ex unâ syllabâ *from one syllable* fiunt *are made* duæ *two:* ut *as,* Debuerant *they ought* evolüisse *to have unrolled* suos fusos *their spindles:* evolüisse pro *for* evolvisse. Sic *so* silüæ aliquando *sometimes* pro *for* silvæ.

9. Heroicus versus *an heroic verse,* qui *which* dicitur *is called* etiam *also* Hexameter, constat *consist of* sex *six* pedibus *feet* seu *or* metris *metres;* quintus locus *the fifth place* vindicat *requires* sibi *for itself* dactylum *a dactyl,* sextus *the sixth* spondeum *a spondee,* reliqui *the other places* (*take*) hunc

Digitized by Google

vel illum *the one or the other*, prout volumus *as we like best:* ut *as*, Tĭtўrĕ, *O Tityrus*, tū *you* rĕcŭbāns *lying* sūb *under* tēgmĭnĕ *the shade* pătŭlæ fagi *of the spreading beech.*

Aliquando *sometimes* spondeus *a spondee* post dactylum *after a dactyl* reperitur *is found* etiam *also* in quinto loco *in the fifth place:* ut *as*, Cārā sŏbŏlēs *dear progeny* Dĕūm *of the gods* māgnūm īncrēmēntūm *mighty increment* Jovis *of Jove.*

10. Elegiacus versus *an Elegiac verse*, qui *which* vocatur *is called* et *also* Pentameter *a Pentameter*, constat *consists* duabus partibus *of two parts;* quarum *of which* prior *the first* habet *has* duos pedes *two feet*, vel *either* dactylicos *dactylic* vel *or* spondiacos *spondaic*, cum *with* (*succeeded by*) longâ syllabâ *a long syllable;* altera *the other* (*part*) (habet *has*) etiam *also* duos pedes *two feet*, sed *but* tantùm *only* dactylicos *dactylic ones*, cum *with* syllabâ *a syllable:* ut *as*, Amor *love* ēst *is* rēs *a thing* plēnă *full* sōlĭcĭtī tĭmōrĭs *of anxious fear.*

11. Ultima syllaba *the last syllable* versus *of a verse* habetur *is* communis *common*, hoc est *that is*, potest esse *may be* vel longa vel brevis *either long or short.*

12. Vocalis *a vowel* ante *before* duas consonantes *two consonants*, vel *or* duplicem consonantem *a double consonant*, in eâdem dictione *in the same word*, est *is* longa *long* positione *by position:* ut *as*, vēntus *wind*, āxis *axis* cūjus *whose.*

13. Si *if* consonans *a consonant* claudat *ends* priorem dictionem *the former word* item *and* sequente *the following* (*word*) incipiente *beginning* consonante *with a consonant*, vocalis *the vowel* præcedens *preceding* est *is* longa *long* positione, *by position:* ut *as*, Sūm *I am* majŏr *greater* quām *than* cui *whom* fortuna *fortune* possĭt nocere *can hurt*: ubi *where*

Digitized by Google

syllabæ *the syllables* jor, sum, quam, et *and* sit, sunt *are* longæ *long* positione *by position.*

14. Brevis vocalis *a short vowel* ante *before* mutam *a mute,* liquidal (*if*) *the liquid l,* et *and* præcipuè r *especially r* sequente *follows it,* redditur *is made* communis *common:* ut *as,* pătris, volŭcris. Sed *but* non in compositis *not in compound words,* ut *as,* ăb-luo *I wash away,* ŏb-ruo *I overwhelm,* et *and* (*a vowel*) longa *long* naturâ *by nature* nunquam *never* corripitur *is shortened:* ut *as,* mātris a *from* māter *a mother;* ācris *acrid* ab *from* ācer *sharp;* salūbris *healthy* a *from* salūber.

15. Vocalis ante vocalem *a vowel, before a vowel* et *and* ante *before* literam h *the letter h,* in eâdem dictione *in the same word,* est *is* brevis *short:* ut *as,* Dĕus *God,* mĕus *my,* tŭus *thy,* pĭus *pious,* nĭhil *nothing.*

16. Excipias *except* genitivos in ius *genitives in* ius: ut *as,* unius, illius, &c., ubi *where* i *the i* reperitur *is found* communis *common,* licet *although* in alterĭus et *and* utrĭus sit *it is* semper *always* brevis *short,* in alīus (i. e. *that is* alĭĭus) *of another* et *and* fortasse *probably* solius semper *always* longa *long.*

17. Excipiendi *to be excepted* etiam *also* sunt *are* antiqui genitivi in ai *the old genitives in* ai, ut *as,* aulāi *of a hall,* genitivi et dativi *genitives and datives* quintæ declinationis *of the fifth declension,* ubi *where* e inter geminum i *e between two i's* fit *is made* longa *long:* ut as, faciēi *of a face;* alioqui *in other cases* non *not:* ut *as,* rēi *of a thing,* spēi *of hope,* fidēi *of faith;* aliquando *sometimes* et *too* vocativi *the vocative* Cāi *Caius,* Pompēi *Pompey.*

Sed *but* apud Ennium *in Ennius,*

Digitized by Google

Bonus vir *a good man* haud magnâ cum re *not with much money* sed plenu' fidei *but full of honesty.*

18. Fi in fio est *is* longa *long,* nisi *unless* e et r, *e and r* sequntur *follow* simul *together:* ut *as,* fĭerem *I should become* fĭeri *to become.* Omnia *all things* jam *now* fĭunt *are done* quæ *which* negabam *I denied* posse *to be able* fĭeri *could be done (to be done).*

19. Diūs *divine* āer *air,* ēheu *alas,* habent *have* primam syllabam *the first syllable* longam *long;* Diana *Diana* communem *common.*

Ohe interjectio *the interjection* Ohe habet *has* priorem syllabam *the first syllable* communem *common.*

20. Vocalis ante vocalem *a vowel before a vowel* in Græcis dictionibus *in Greek words* est *is* subinde *sometimes* longa *long:* ut *as,* Dicite *say* Pĭerides *Muses;* Respice *regard* Lāerten *Laertes;* Āer *the air* vertitur *is turned.*

21. Et *and* in Græcis possessivis *in Greek possessives:* ut *as,* Nutrix *the nurse* Ænēia *of Æneas;* Orpheus *Orpheus* Rhodopēius *of Rhodope;* Achāicus ignis *Achæan fire.*

Omnis diphthongus *every diphthong* apud Latinos *in Latin* est *is* longa *long:* ut *as,* aurum *gold,* neuter *neither,* musæ *muses;* nisi *except* vocali *with a vowel* sequente *following:* ut *as,* præire *to go before,* præustus *burnt at the end,* præamplus *very large:* aliquando *sometimes* et *too* in fine dictionis *at the end of a word:* ut *as,* Insulæ *islands* Ionio *in the Ionian.*

22. Composita *compounds* sequuntur *follow* ferè *usually* quantitatem *the quantity* suorum simplicium *of their simples:* ut *as,* a *from* lĕgo lĕgis *I read, thou readest,* perlĕgo *I read through;* (*from*) lēgo, legas *I send, thou sendest,* allēgo *I allege;* ab *from* æquus *fair,* inīquus *unfair;* a *from,* pŏtens

Digitized by Google

powerful, impŏtens *powerless;* a *from* sōlor *I comfort*, consōlor *I console.*

23. Excipe *except*, intereā *mean time*, posteā *afterwards* anteā *before.*

24. Item *also* excipiuntur *are excepted* hæc brevia *these short-syllabled words* enata a longis *derived from long ones:* dejĕro *I deny by oath*, pejĕro *I forswear*, a *from* jūro *I swear:* innŭba *unmarried*, pronŭba *a bridesmaid*, a *from* nūbo *I am married.*

25. Derivata *derivatives* ferè *generally* habent *have* quantitatem *the quantity* suorum primitivorum *of their primitives:* ut *as*, ămator *a lover*, ămicus *a friend*, ămabilis *amiable*, primâ *with the first* brevi *short*, ab *from* ămo *I love.*

THE END.

LONDON:
PRINTED BY SPOTTISWOODE AND CO.
NEW-STREET SQUARE.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google